

# Returning the Tide

*A Tidal Hydrology Restoration Guidance Manual  
for the Southeastern United States*



NOAA

**NOAA  
Restoration  
Center**

*and*

**NOAA  
Coastal Services  
Center**



# Returning the Tide

## *Tidal Hydrology Restoration Guidance Manual*

### **Editors**

Leslie Craig, *NOAA Restoration Center*

Krista McCracken, *The Baldwin Group / NOAA Coastal Services Center*

Howard Schnabolk, *NOAA Restoration Center*

Bethney Ward, *NOAA Coastal Services Center*

### **Contributors:**

Melanie Gange, *NOAA Restoration Center*

Mary Swift, *IM Systems Group*

### **Design:**

Milena Viljoen, *IM Systems Group / NOAA Restoration Center*



The NOAA Restoration Center and NOAA Coastal Services Center would like to express sincere appreciation to the over 70 participants who attended NOAA's *Tidal Hydrology Restoration: Breaking Down Barriers* workshop in 2008. Their input and experience related to tidal hydrology restoration projects in the Southeastern U.S. and beyond form the basis of this guidance manual.

This document would also not be possible without the valuable input from the restoration project managers who shared the intricacies and lessons learned from their projects. The site-specific information offered to this manual provides relevance and context, and serves as a starting point for new restoration practitioners initiating tidal hydrology restoration projects. Specific thanks are extended to: David Burdick (UNH), Jim David (St. Lucie County), Eric Fehrmann (Pinellas County), Monica Harris (USFWS), Robert Loflin (City of Sanibel), Cheryl Metzger (FL DEP), Annette Nielsen (FL DEP), Thomas Ries (Ecosphere Restoration Institute), Tracy Skrabal (NCCF), Rachel Sweeney (NOAA), Mike Walker (Huntington Beach State Park), and John Wallace (USFWS).

In addition, all or portions of this manual were reviewed by the following experts: Allison Allen (NOAA), David Burdick (UNH), David Dale (NOAA), Hassan Mashriqui (LSU/NOAA), Scott Neubauer (USC), Thom Reis (Ecosphere Restoration Institute), Lawrence Rozas (NOAA), Kevin Smith (MD DNR), and Pace Wilber (NOAA). Their insightful suggestions and constructive comments have greatly improved the quality of this manual.

Along our coastlines, tidal waters have a profound effect on the surrounding landscape and nearby natural and manmade communities. As the tides move through estuaries, water shapes the habitats that provide many services for coastal areas—seagrass habitat that provides refuge for numerous juvenile fish species, salt marsh and mangrove habitat that protect and fortify the shoreline, oyster habitat that filters pollutants. Over time, however, the natural ebb and flow of tidal hydrology around the country has been modified by human development and manmade alterations to the land.

In the Southeastern United States, the restriction and blockage of tidal flow in estuarine ecosystems has resulted in the degradation of thousands of acres of habitat. Activities to impound, dredge and fill estuaries were common in the mid-1900's. In some cases, canals, levees, dikes, causeways and roads were built around and directly through the salt marsh, seagrass, mangroves and oyster reefs that once flourished along the coast. Many examples exist where there was no consideration for preserving tidal flow, resulting in a complete absence of tidal influence into the system. In other areas, some degree of tidal influence was preserved but with restrictions that altered habitats. Altered hydrology has changed the dynamics of entire tidal ecosystems, degrading them or leading to loss of important habitat.

This long history of tidal restriction and vast degradation in the Southeast has created the need for restoration and an opportunity to make a positive impact on an ecosystem-wide scale. Removing barriers and enhancing tidal flow can often naturally restore entire estuarine habitats, and crucial ecosystem services. Tidal flow projects often have a relatively small construction footprint but have a large beneficial impact on the surrounding areas, resulting in extremely cost-effective, estuary-wide restoration.

To improve on techniques and share best practices for tidal hydrology restoration in the Southeast U.S., the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) created this manual to focus on "returning the tide". In January 2008, NOAA hosted a two-day *Tidal Hydrology Restoration: Breaking Down Barriers* workshop in Charleston, South Carolina to discuss multiple aspects of tidal hydrology restoration. More than 70 experts, practitioners and coastal managers participated in the event, sharing their expertise and recommending new and established methods. This manual expands upon the Proceedings from the workshop through literature reviews, case studies, and consultation with the experts.

*Tidal Hydrology Restoration: Returning the Tide* offers guidance to restoration practitioners and coastal resource managers who may not have familiarity with tidal hydrology restoration techniques. Specifically, this manual will help users:

- Identify restoration projects and partners;
- Develop appropriate objectives and quality project design;
- Define and implement construction and maintenance strategies;
- Navigate and optimize the permitting process;
- Determine the meaning of “hydrology restoration success”; and
- Build community support for projects and address typical community concerns.

Unique features of the manual include the *Toolkit* and *Project Portfolios*. The *Toolkit* section is a resource for restoration project planning and implementation. It is designed to be easy-to-use by providing checklists, agency contact information, example project documents, and bulleted to-do lists for every stage of project implementation. The *Project Portfolios* provide details on 13 real-world projects including background, results, and lessons learned. They also reference supporting documents such as financial documents, scopes of work, designs, and permitting information to serve as examples. Projects included in this section are highlighted as examples and case studies throughout the manual. All of the information in this manual can also be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html). Resources found in the *Toolkit* and *Project Portfolios* can be downloaded and used in a more interactive way from the online version.

NOAA’s strategic plan includes our objective to promote healthy habitats that sustain resilient and thriving marine resources and communities. Returning the tide to estuarine habitats that have been degraded by tidal hydrology modifications in the Southeastern U.S. will help to accomplish this objective, which is even more critical in the face of climate change. NOAA hopes that this manual, and the accompanying on-line resources, will serve as a powerful tool for moving this important restoration technique forward throughout the Southeastern U.S.

Best Regards,

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "J. Montano". The signature is written in a cursive, flowing style.



# I. RETURNING THE TIDE: GUIDANCE MANUAL

The goal of this manual is to increase and improve habitat restoration in estuarine environments impacted by the creation of barriers to tidal hydrology. The chapters that follow provide guidance to restoration practitioners and coastal resource managers on the multiple aspects of project implementation.

Acknowledgements . . . . . i

Letter to the Reader . . . . . ii



## Chapter 1: Background . . . . . 2

Tidal Hydrology Modifications in the Southeastern United States . . . . . 2

Influence of Tidal Hydrology Modifications on Estuarine Habitats . . . . . 5

Benefits of Tidal Hydrology Restoration: Breaking Down Barriers . . . . . 6

Cost-Effectiveness of Returning the Tide . . . . . 7



## Chapter 2: Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning . . . 8

Opportunistic Action vs. Regional Planning . . . . . 8

Identifying Sites for Tidal Hydrology Restoration . . . . . 9

Tools for Identifying Potential Sites . . . . . 11

Project Feasibility and Planning . . . . . 12

Potential Funding Requirements and Sources . . . . . 14

St. Vincent Island Estuarine Habitat Restoration Project . . . . . 16



## Chapter 3: Goals and Objectives . . . . . 18

Importance of Goals and Objectives . . . . . 18

Defining Project Goals and Objectives . . . . . 20

Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project . . . . . 22



## Chapter 4: Project Design . . . . . 24

Ecological and Physical Design Parameters . . . . . 24

Design Feasibility Considerations . . . . . 24

Active and Passive Design Strategies . . . . . 27

Hydrology Modeling in Project Design . . . . . 32

Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project . . . . . 34



## Chapter 5: Permitting and Regulatory Compliance . . . . . 36

An Introduction to Federal and State Authorization . . . . . 36

Building Successful Relationships with Permitting Agencies . . . . . 40



## Chapter 6: Construction and Maintenance . . . . . 42

Pre-Construction Preparation . . . . . 42

Construction Implementation . . . . . 48

Post-Construction Management . . . . . 52

Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project . . . . . 55

	<b>Chapter 7: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring</b> . . . . .	<b>56</b>
	<i>Background and Reasons for Monitoring</i> . . . . .	56
	<i>Major Components of a Monitoring Plan</i> . . . . .	57
	<i>What and How to Monitor</i> . . . . .	58
	<i>Qualitative vs. Quantitative Data</i> . . . . .	62
	<i>Principal Monitoring Periods</i> . . . . .	62
	<i>Considerations for Developing Scientific Evaluation Plans</i> . . . . .	64
	<i>Advancing the Science of Tidal Hydrology Restoration</i> . . . . .	66
	<i>Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	69
	<b>Chapter 8: Community Support</b> . . . . .	<b>70</b>
	<i>Building Programmatic Support for Restoration</i> . . . . .	70
	<i>Building Project-Level Support</i> . . . . .	71
	<i>Developing Volunteer Strategies</i> . . . . .	73
	<i>Volunteers and Monitoring</i> . . . . .	74
	<i>Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	76
	GLOSSARY . . . . .	78
	REFERENCES . . . . .	80

## II. RETURNING THE TIDE: PROJECT PORTFOLIOS

 *The Project Portfolios provide consistent and easily compared information on project-specific components (such as background, goals and lessons learned). Each Portfolio also includes a preview of project documents, including design drawings and permits, available for download in the online version of this manual.*

<i>Eden Landing Salt Pond Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	86
<i>Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	92
<i>Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	98
<i>St. Vincent Island Estuarine Habitat Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	104
<i>Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	110
<i>Newman Branch Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	116
<i>Don Pedro Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	122
<i>Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	128
<i>Tarpon Bay Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	134
<i>Wildcat Cove Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	140
<i>Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	146
<i>North River Farms Wetland Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	152
<i>Little River Marsh Restoration Project</i> . . . . .	158

# III. RETURNING THE TIDE: TOOLKIT



The Toolkit provides resources for the multiple phases of project planning and implementation. It includes easy-to-use checklists, agency contact information and summaries of tips from the manual. Many of these tools are available for download in the online version of this manual.

	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning</b> . . . . .	166
	Toolkit Resource #1: Summary of Recommendations . . . . .	167
	Toolkit Resource #2: Site Hydrology Evaluation Questions. . . . .	167
	Toolkit Resource #3: Project Identification Checklist . . . . .	168
	Toolkit Resource #4: GIS and Online Mapping Resources. . . . .	170
	Toolkit Resource #5: Project Feasibility Questions Worksheet. . . . .	173
	Toolkit Resource #6: Organizations Providing Technical/Financial Support. . . . .	175
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Goals and Objectives</b> . . . . .	176
	Toolkit Resource #7: Summary Recommendations. . . . .	176
	Toolkit Resource #8: Project Goals Worksheet . . . . .	177
	Toolkit Resource #9: Project Objectives Worksheet . . . . .	178
	Toolkit Resource #10: References for Adaptive Management. . . . .	179
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Project Design</b> . . . . .	180
	Toolkit Resource #11: Summary Recommendations . . . . .	180
	Toolkit Resource #12: Recommended (Minimum) Modeling Inputs . . . . .	181
	Toolkit Resource #13: Additional Design Resources. . . . .	181
	Toolkit Resource #14: Modeling Inventories. . . . .	181
	Toolkit Resource #15: Hydrological Model Summary Table . . . . .	182
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Permitting and Regulatory Compliance</b> . . . . .	184
	Toolkit Resource #16: Summary Recommendations . . . . .	185
	Toolkit Resource #17: Federal Regulatory Policies, Citations, and Web sites. . . . .	185
	Toolkit Resource #18: U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service ESA Consultation Template . . . . .	186
	Toolkit Resource #19: NOAA Community-based Restoration Program NEPA Checklist . . . . .	190
	Toolkit Resource #20: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Contact Information . . . . .	195
	Toolkit Resource #21: State Regulatory Agency Contact Information. . . . .	196
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Construction and Maintenance</b> . . . . .	198
	Toolkit Resource #22: Summary Recommendations . . . . .	198
	Toolkit Resource #23: Example Construction Process Outline . . . . .	199
	Toolkit Resource #24: Example Multi-Funder Project Budget . . . . .	200
	Toolkit Resource #25: Match Analysis Tool . . . . .	201
	Toolkit Resource #26: Example Independent Cost Estimates. . . . .	202
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring</b> . . . . .	204
	Toolkit Resource #27: Summary Recommendations . . . . .	204
	Toolkit Resource #28: Monitoring Plan Template . . . . .	205
	Toolkit Resource #29: Monitoring Data Collection Forms. . . . .	206
	Toolkit Resource #30: Example Wildlife Monitoring Datasheet . . . . .	210
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Community Support.</b> . . . . .	212
	Toolkit Resource #31: Summary Recommendations . . . . .	212
	Toolkit Resource #32: NGOs Focusing on Coastal Restoration and Community Involvement in the Southeastern United States. . . . .	213
	Toolkit Resource #33: Resources for Developing Volunteer Management Programs . . . . .	213



# Guidance Manual

*for Tidal Hydrology Restoration Projects*

---

Providing guidance to restoration practitioners and coastal resource managers on the multiple aspects of tidal hydrology restoration project implementation.



# Chapter 1: Background



Barriers to natural surface water movement and tidal flow such as levees, dikes, causeways, and other barriers can result in the degradation of estuarine habitat, particularly in sensitive ecosystems in the Southeast United States. These tidal barriers can precipitate conversion to a predominantly freshwater habitat, which changes the dynamics of an entire ecosystem.

This chapter discusses reasons for historic **tidal hydrology modifications**, the impacts of those modifications on different estuarine habitats found in the Southeastern U.S., and the benefits of removing these tidal barriers. More specifically, this chapter describes the following information:

- Scale and geographic extent of tidal modifications;
- Reasons for historic tidal modifications in the Southeastern U.S.;
- Characteristics of estuarine habitats and impacts from modified tidal hydrology;
- Ecological and socio-economic benefits of tidal hydrology restoration;
- Cost-effectiveness of removing tidal hydrology barriers; and
- Example tidal hydrology restoration projects.

*Old rice fields in coastal South Carolina are now managed impoundments.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



## Tidal Hydrology Modifications in the Southeastern United States

Estuarine habitats such as salt marshes and seagrasses have been adversely impacted by historic tidal hydrology modifications and tidal restrictions. On the east coast of Florida alone, nearly 40,000 acres of coastal marsh are impounded (Rey and Kain 1990). In Louisiana, more than 91,000 acres of state and federally owned land are impounded (Day et al. 1990), and in South Carolina, there are over 70,000 acres of rice field impoundments (NOAA 1979). Some hydrologic modifications have been in place for so long that it is impossible to recognize that these locations once functioned as estuarine habitat. Over time, many modifications have lacked maintenance and failed, resulting in partial impoundments containing various forms of degraded habitat.

Along the Gulf Coast, it is common to drive from the mainland to barrier islands along earthen causeways built through marshes and seagrass habitat between the 1940s and 1960s. For example, in South Florida, a causeway was constructed in the 1950s to provide access from the mainland to Sanibel and Captiva Islands, blocking all tidal flow through Dinkins Bayou into Clam Bayou. Clam Bayou became completely impounded, resulting in the loss of 150 acres of mangroves, 120 acres of seagrass, and 20 acres of oyster reef habitat.



For more, see the **Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 128).

As early as the 1930s, impoundment activities were used along the Atlantic coast to create agricultural land and migratory bird habitat, and to control mosquitoes. An **impoundment** is an area created by the placement of earthen barriers around its perimeter, which exclude or control the influence of tidal flow.

While many of these activities are not in common practice today, the results of these historic modifications have significant impact on present-day coastal ecosystems. These changes were made for the following reasons:



*Tidal waters are reintroduced to the 6,500-acre Bahia Grande basin in South Texas after being blocked for over 60 years.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



## Background



- **Agriculture.** As coastal populations increased, marsh areas were drained of tidal waters and used as fields for crop plants, such as rice impoundments. These areas would also be used to graze cattle and other livestock.
- **Roads.** To allow for direct access through tidal systems, elevated road beds were constructed by borrowing sediments from adjacent areas. It is common to see ditches along the length of a roadbed through a coastal system as a result of the “borrowed” material. Although small culverts were typically placed intermittently under the road to relieve flooding concerns, tidal flows remained restricted.
- **Causeways.** Dredge materials were used to create elevated roadbeds from the mainland to barrier islands, between islands, or bisecting an embayment. The dredge material was typically removed from nearby habitat and placed in a manner where tidal flow was completely inhibited, or restricted to narrow bridges or culverts.
- **Duck habitat.** The exclusion of tidal flow and freshwater impoundment created areas for important migratory bird habitat and hunting opportunities.
- **Mosquito control (impoundments).** Water levels in coastal areas were, and still may be, seasonally managed to minimize mosquito populations. The impoundments often included water control devices with the primary goal of controlling mosquito populations and coastal flooding.
- **Mosquito control (ditching).** Checkerboard patterns of ditches were dug through mangrove and marsh systems to facilitate drainage and deplete mosquito populations. This technique altered tidal flow through the system by creating routes for rapid flooding and drying. The excavated ditch sediments were typically piled near the ditches, creating additional hydrology modifications.
- **Dredge spoil disposal.** Dredge spoils resulting from the construction of navigation channels were often disposed of in estuarine habitats, resulting in elevations that did not support the historic ecosystem functions or restricted tidal flow into or through the estuary.



*Sandpiper Pond in Murrells Inlet, SC, was tidally influenced before shoreline modifications and Hurricane Hugo blocked tidal flow, turning the area into a lagoon.*

*Photo Credit: SC State Parks*



## Influence of Tidal Hydrology Modifications on Estuarine Habitats

Tidal hydrology is one of the main factors influencing the location and function of estuarine habitats. In general, estuarine ecosystems are created from the natural influx of seawater interacting with freshwater. The salinity, volume, exchange, temperature, and velocity of water; flooding frequency; and elevation all influence coastal habitat types and ecological functions. For example, a high marsh is flooded with seawater less frequently than a low marsh, allowing fish to utilize the high marsh less frequently than the low marsh. Conversely, seagrass beds are almost always inundated with seawater and are adapted to specific depths, salinity, and water clarity. If the amount or type of water (i.e., saline or fresh) entering the ecosystem is altered by a tidal barrier, a shift in habitat type will likely follow.

Some habitat types are more sensitive to altered hydrology and changes will occur rapidly, often resulting in dramatic shifts in the composition of faunal and vegetation communities. Other habitat types will shift more slowly – and perhaps will look the same (e.g., the same species still occur) but may not function the same (e.g., will not provide the same ecosystem services) (Turner and Lewis 1997).

A variety of specific tidal habitats in the Southeastern U.S. are susceptible to damage from tidal hydrology modification. These include:

**Open water/soft bottom.** Open water plays a critical role in establishing a common link between habitats through its ability to transport both solid and dissolved materials, in addition to plankton and other organisms. The physical and chemical characteristics of open water affect all associated habitats, including soft bottom estuarine areas (NOAA 2003). Soft bottom habitats host a wide range of bacteria, plants, and animals from all levels of the food web, known collectively as benthic organisms. These organisms are among the most important component of coastal ecosystems (NOAA 2003). They provide an important link in

the food chain by consuming phytoplankton before they are, in turn, consumed by larger organisms such as finfish (Lenihan and Micheli 2001). Open water and soft bottom habitats sustained by tidal influence degrade in functionality when water flow is blocked. These areas, commonly called lagoons, are characterized by low salinity (less than 10 parts per million) and contain less than one-third seawater. As a result, lagoons are less able to sustain species that thrive under the more saline conditions. Additionally, restricted tidal flow can result in reduced oxygen concentrations and increased nutrient loading. This can allow for vigorous growth of algae and other microorganisms that further deplete oxygen, often leading to fish kills and rapid changes in benthic and vegetation composition (Gönenç and Wolflin 2005).

**Tidal wetlands.** Tidal marshes, or tidal wetlands, in the Southeastern U.S. include salt marsh (low salinity to high salinity) and mangrove. Marshes under the influence of tidal ebb and flow maintain high water quality (Adam 1990); support biodiversity, fisheries, and high biological productivity for smaller organisms; sustain wildlife habitat for birds and waterfowl; mitigate the impacts of storm surges, flooding, and sea level rise; control erosion; and attract people for recreation (Ellison and Farnsworth 2001; Adam et al. 2008; Zedler et al. 2008). However, these tidal marshes are on the decline and the functions they serve are being lost due to degradation caused by pollutants, urban runoff, invasive species, and dredging for commercial and recreational use (Weinstein and Kreeger 2000). More than half of all tidal marshes in the U.S. have been destroyed by human development activities through draining, diking, dredging, and filling (Kennish 2001). With the absence or restriction of tidal influence, tidal wetlands will eventually give way to a different habitat type. Depending on the degree of tidal restriction, elevation, and amount of freshwater input, the tidal marsh may become severely degraded through peaks of high and low salinity and invasion of non-native vegetation, or it may convert completely to a freshwater wetland, an open water pond, or dry upland (Montalto and Steenhuis 2004).



## Background



**Seagrass.** Seagrasses are marine flowering plants and typically grow in shallow coastal waters, including protected bays and inlets (Hemminga and Duarte 2000; Larkum et al. 2006). In the Southeastern U.S., marine seagrasses are found from the Gulf of Mexico to the eastern Florida coast, and along the North Carolina coast. Seagrasses provide structured habitat for shallow marine and estuarine soft bottoms, offering refuge for many commercially and recreationally important fish and invertebrates. Water depth and clarity are critical for seagrasses since they live in anoxic sediments and generally require more light than other marine plants (Williams and Heck 2001). Seagrass habitat is often fragmented into patches resulting from natural processes, such as waves and currents, but also from human activities including boating, dredging, and coastal development (e.g., docks and piers). Some of the most common impacts to submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV) beds have been the draining and diking of coastal wetlands for agriculture, heavy industry, and recreation (Jude and Pappas 1992; Edsall and Charlton 1997). The distribution and quality of seagrass habitat can also be adversely affected by water diversions, dams, impervious surfaces, and other activities that alter natural hydrologic drainage patterns, water levels, salinity regimes, erosion/sedimentation rates, temperature, and water quality. For instance, restriction of tidal flow may result in decreased water velocities, allowing sediment to settle on grass blades and thereby inhibiting photosynthesis.

**Oyster reefs.** Oyster reefs are composed of densely packed individual oysters that form a highly productive and complex three-dimensional habitat (Zimmerman et al. 1989). These reefs are abundant throughout the estuaries of the southeast United States and can be found in both shallow inter-tidal areas such as creeks, lagoons, and embayments and deeper sub-tidal areas. In addition to improving water quality through the filtering activity of oysters (Newell 1988), reefs provide feeding, breeding, and nursery ground for benthic invertebrates and numerous fish and bird species. Significant economic value is generated by reefs from the many recreationally and commercially valuable animals that rely on reefs such as fish, crabs, and oysters. Additionally, the hard structure of

the oyster reef stabilizes sediments, providing shoreline protection for adjacent fringing marshes (Meyer et al. 1997). The health and survival of an oyster reef is highly dependent on tidal currents to import food sources from surrounding habitats, maintain water quality characteristics such as temperature and salinity levels, and flush away smothering sediments (Dame 1996; Kennedy et al. 2006). Similar to other estuarine habitats, oyster reefs have been negatively impacted by human activities, including those associated with hydrologic modifications. For instance, the construction of dikes or levees in intertidal zones can lead to the direct destruction of reefs, while salinity changes due to altered hydrology can create unfavorable conditions that lead to degraded reefs and the potential for complete loss.

### Benefits of Tidal Hydrology Restoration: Breaking Down Barriers

Numerous ecological and socio-economic benefits can be achieved by removing hydrology barriers to restore or enhance tidal flow.

Examples of ecological benefits include:

- Creation/enhancement of fish and wildlife habitat;
- Improved habitat longevity and sustainability;
- Reduction of shoreline erosion;
- Storm surge attenuation and flood mitigation;
- Adaptation to or accommodation of sea level rise;
- Storm water management (reducing rate and quantity of runoff);
- Reduction/control of invasive species; and
- Improved ground water and surface water quality (dissolved oxygen, nutrient loads, sediment loads, contaminants, salinity, temperature).



Examples of socio- economic benefits include:

- Enhanced fisheries productivity for commercial/recreational harvest;
- Improved shoreline/infrastructure protection; and
- Increase in surrounding property values.

Often a single tidal hydrology restoration project can achieve a combination of these benefits and affect more than one habitat type, making barrier removal an attractive and efficient restoration technique.

## Cost-Effectiveness of Returning the Tide

Relatively small physical barriers to tidal flow can negatively impact large areas of habitat. Consequently, the large-scale restoration of these habitats on an ecosystem level can be achieved from a relatively inexpensive (on a

cost/acre basis), small footprint of work. For example, removing a section of dredge-and-fill causeway and replacing it with a 40-foot bridge enhanced more than 1,000 acres of seagrass habitat in the Pinellas County Florida Aquatic Preserve near Fort DeSoto. Removal of the relatively small barrier (in relation to the size of the impacted adjacent habitat) allowed the water flow to naturally restore the surrounding seagrass habitat.



For more information on this project, see the **Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 110).

**Table 1** (below) lists some examples of tidal hydrology restoration projects throughout the Southeastern U.S. with associated acreage, habitat type improved, and cost per acre restored. Despite the funding required for engineering studies and construction, projects such as these demonstrate the cost-effectiveness of tidal barrier removal on a per-acre-restored basis.

Full descriptions of the efforts listed below can be found in the **Project Portfolios** (page 85).



**Table 1. Example tidal hydrology restoration projects.**

Name	Modification/ solution	Acres	Habitat type	Total Cost	Cost/acre
Bahia Grande Brownsville, TX	Dredge-fill/Breach	6,500	Soft bottom, sand	\$1,800,000	\$277
Hopedale St. Bernard Parish, LA	Levee/Water control structure	3,086	Salt marsh	\$2,140,000	\$693
St. Vincent Island St. Vincent Island, FL	Road construction/ removal and culverts	1,925	Salt marsh	\$46,000	\$24
Fort DeSoto Pinellas County, FL	Causeway/Bridge	1,140	Mangrove, soft bottom, seagrass	\$1,600,000	\$1,403
Don Pedro Charlotte County, FL	Road construction and dredge-fill/ Culvert and scrape down	32	Mangrove, salt marsh	\$104,800	\$3,275
Clam Bayou Sanibel Island, FL	Causeway/Box culverts	290	Mangrove, oyster, seagrass	\$1,000,000	\$3,448
Tarpon Bay Naples, FL	Causeway/Box culverts	360	Water column	\$1,300,000	\$3,611
Wildcat Cove St. Lucie County, FL	Culverts	100	Mangrove, upland	\$84,000	\$840
Sandpiper Pond Murrels Inlet, NC	Sedimentation/Breach	35	Salt marsh	\$81,000	\$2,314



## Chapter 2: Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning



Project identification is the first step in the strategic planning process. Before spending significant time and resources on a project, restoration practitioners should be able to identify the biological importance and likelihood of restoration success at potential project sites (Battelle 2003). An initial feasibility analysis should also be performed that evaluates how the local or state political climate, permits, funding, or community acceptance might support or impede a project. As project planning proceeds, a team should be assembled that is knowledgeable of the opportunities, complexities, and potential pitfalls of the project. Finally, the development of partnerships and consideration of funding opportunities are also important steps in planning.

This chapter introduces the steps and tools needed to identify tidal hydrology restoration sites and to conduct initial feasibility analysis and project planning. It includes discussion of:

- Recognizing a restoration opportunity;
- Regional-scale planning;
- Characteristics of a potential tidal hydrology restoration site;
- Evaluation of project feasibility; and
- Project identification, feasibility, and planning highlight project: St. Vincent Island Estuarine Habitat Restoration Project, Apalachicola, Florida.

Much of the information in this chapter is a compilation of the experiences of restoration experts and cited literature. Additional project identification, feasibility, and planning resources and summary recommendations can be found in the *Toolkit* (page 166).

### Opportunistic Action vs. Regional Planning

Identification of a project site can result from **regional strategic planning** or a **discrete opportunity**. Discrete restoration opportunities may arise from a variety of circumstances, such as natural disasters and changes in industrial or commercial land use. Due to potential tax benefits and improved public relations, land owners may also be compelled to donate land or establish conservation easements that may provide a restoration opportunity. At a smaller scale, private landowners often allow for habitat restoration on their land to increase property values or to exercise environmental stewardship.

While discrete opportunities can springboard successful projects, strategic planning helps prioritize regional restoration efforts, allows for widespread restoration support, and may focus available funding on projects that meet larger spatial and temporal goals and objectives. The purpose of long-term regional planning is to develop a strategic plan that identifies ecosystem-based needs, goals, and priorities. Planning at the regional level typically requires an in-depth process that is vetted through local experts, stakeholders, and resource managers. Long-term restoration must be an ongoing process whereby restoration implementation becomes a continuing series of management decisions (Steyer 2000). Comprehensive restoration strategies also lead to the development of long-term expected outcomes, which can instill a sense of commitment and inspire confidence in the local community and potential funding organizations.

An example of a comprehensive, long-term, regional approach to coastal restoration is the Coastal Wetlands Planning, Protection, and Restoration Act (CWPPRA) Program. The CWPPRA program has been a catalyst for large-scale changes in ecosystem-level resource management. The program is mandated to: maintain an interagency Task Force to steer operations; implement intensive planning for the development



Resource managers at St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge utilized a hydrology study, completed by the U.S. Geological Survey, to identify and prioritize sites in need of hydrologic restoration.

Photo Credit: USFWS

of restoration strategies; develop and implement restoration projects; and implement a comprehensive monitoring program to evaluate the effectiveness of projects. By coordinating efforts, CWPPRA has minimized redundant efforts and conflicting goals, thereby maximizing the long-term productivity of Louisiana's coastal wetlands (Steyer 2000).



For more information about CWPPRA monitoring, see **Chapter 7: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring**

to strategic partnerships, leveraging opportunities and public interests. (For instance, it may be important to emphasize economic benefits in terms of property values, recreation, and tourism.)

- *Think broadly.* Advocate for the broadest ecological benefits possible and do not be stifled by political boundaries or by a focus on managing an individual species.

## Identifying Sites for Tidal Hydrology Restoration

**Structural alterations.** Site identification begins by recognizing structural alterations that impede tidal flow. Usual culprits of impeded flow include failing or inadequate culverts, dikes, levees, causeways, and landfills that were implemented without full consideration or understanding of ecosystem impacts. These structures may have initially been installed to enhance the site, but have since lost their functionality and may be damaging ecosystem health. Such structures may need to be removed or re-engineered.

When planning at a regional scale:

- *Be flexible.* Make the project scale and timeline compatible with concurrent priorities for the larger community.
- *Be open to the public.* Organize public forums to identify priorities and encourage buy-in from a wide range of groups.
- *Be strategic.* Examine the interests of all stakeholders and consider project components that lend themselves



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning



**Ecological change.** Site identification may also occur through observation of physical and ecological shifts in the associated landscape. These shifts may be observed before the tidal obstruction is apparent. Shifts in an area's ecological health may be evident through singular biological incidents such as fish kills or sudden drops in fisheries harvests. Other distinct events include widespread vegetation die-offs, recurring algal blooms, or invasive species proliferation.

While unique events are relatively easy to observe and document, gradual ecological shifts may also be an indication of ecological impairment due to loss of hydrologic function. Whether ecological change is identified through casual observation or

specific evaluation, characterization of the extent of ecological change is important. Long-term monitoring and comparison between historical and current conditions may provide the best evidence that physical alterations to the environment have resulted in ecological change. Information on past conditions can provide valuable information on impacts to the site that may affect restoration actions (Stedman 2003). **Table 2a** below identifies indicators of such long-term ecological changes.



*A list of questions to consider when evaluating sites for tidal hydrology restoration are available in the **Toolkit** (page 167).*

**Table 2a. Long-term indicators of ecological change.**

Common Long-Term Indicator	Impacts Caused by Physical Alteration
Shifts from native to non-native species	Altered hydrology may weaken native species' ability to compete with invasive species.
Shifts in fish assemblages	As physical conditions change, some fish species will prove better adapted to the new environment.
Shifts in benthic assemblages	Species dependent on specific sediment characteristics, turbidity, and water chemistry are impacted by altered hydrology.
Changes in water quality	Reduced tidal flow will alter an area's water chemistry, including salinity, dissolved oxygen, and pH.
Increased flooding and/or shoreline erosion	Blocked freshwater and tidal exchange may lead to increased upland flooding during high rain events. Altered sedimentation due to altered hydrology may increase rates of erosion.
Loss of habitat heterogeneity	Disturbed areas tend to be more homogenous (i.e. vegetation monocultures).

CONSIDER

### Effects on Coastal Freshwater Systems

When identifying potential restoration sites, be cognizant that tidal hydrology restoration projects may not be prudent for every location. Breaking down coastal structural barriers inherently enhances tidal connectivity. The potential for saltwater intrusion could actually pose a threat to some low-lying coastal freshwater ecosystems. Alternatively, many estuaries would benefit greatly through improvement to freshwater flows as a means to re-establish oligohaline habitat and an estuarine salinity gradient.



## Importance of Reference Sites

Comparing a potential project site to relatively undisturbed or “healthy” reference sites nearby is an effective strategy to understand the impacts of hydrology modification on many ecological indicators (Diefenderfer 2003), including water quality (salinity, dissolved oxygen content, or pH), vegetation, and nekton community composition. Comparisons to reference sites can also help define desired ecosystem services and provide targets for post-restoration monitoring.



For more about reference sites, see **Chapter 7: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring.**

## Tools for Identifying Potential Sites

Project teams can use a variety of low- and high-tech methods and tools for site identification.

**In-field investigation.** Few tools rival in-person identification of a potential site. While onsite, the team should locate tidal barriers such as roads, ditches, berms, and areas of impervious surface. Other considerations include adjacent land uses, tidal flow rates and timing; water quality, the presence of wetland plants or invasives, whether or not a wetland existed on site, and what factors resulted in wetland loss or degradation.

**Desktop investigation.** The internet can provide access to a range of resources. A great deal of site information can be rapidly gathered through government agencies or communication with area residents. Information may have been previously gathered by regional or municipal land use

plans and studies. Many resource agencies can provide maps on characteristics such as topography, soil, vegetation, and floodplains. Aerial photography can also help identify an area's association with other wetlands and bodies of water, and historical photographs can provide clues to original conditions. All of these data can be incorporated into a geographic information system to aid in site identification and planning.

**Geographic information systems (GIS).** GIS is a data management tool providing users with an understanding of locations or events based on spatial, or georeferenced (latitude and longitude), data. GIS is used to locate specific features on a landscape, analyze relationships between features, or model landscape processes. With GIS, the team can identify, compare, and prioritize sites, and produce maps based on team-defined criteria. Products supplementing GIS applications often include:

- *Remotely-sensed imagery.* Aerial imagery provides users with a comprehensive aerial view of an environment. Color, infrared, satellite, and digital imagery also fall under this category. Comparing historic imagery with current imagery could provide evidence of landscape changes over time.
- *Digital elevation models (DEMs).* Elevation data (collected from aerial or bathymetric surveys) are critical to understanding how water moves, and thus modeling hydrology. When working with elevation data (or any other spatial data set) it is important to understand how the data were collected and created, including horizontal and vertical spacing, accuracy, and datums. This information is usually found in the dataset's metadata.
- *Maps.* Land cover, land use, and elevation relief maps can help users visualize a site and its surrounding area. Historical maps illustrate previous site conditions while current maps show existing features. Online mapping tools provide users with the capability to create maps specific to their needs.

Ideally, a project team will combine GIS data from a potential restoration site with in-field observation.



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning



*Historic charts, aerial photographs, and nautical charts like this 1938 chart of Mullet Key at the mouth of Tampa Bay, Florida (now Fort DeSoto County Park), are useful tools for identifying modifications to hydrology.*



The **Toolkit** contains a useful **Site Identification Checklist** (page 168) for examining potential restoration sites, as well as a list of GIS data portal and online mapping tools (page 170).

### Project Feasibility and Planning

Following the identification of a tidally restricted site, the **feasibility analysis** and planning stage will be initiated. Several factors must be evaluated to determine if restoration of the site is achievable, including landownership, team and partnership opportunities, funding, and permitting needs. During the initial feasibility analysis, such factors should be given cursory

consideration. After satisfactory completion of the feasibility analysis, the same factors should be revisited more thoroughly during the planning stage. Ideally, multiple evaluations of the following factors should be produced throughout the project cycle.



*A feasibility questions worksheet summarizing the feasibility and planning information below is available in the **Toolkit** (page 173).*

**Landownership/land use.** Ownership of the potential restoration location will have direct ramifications on the feasibility and expedience of project implementation. Adjacent or regional land uses may or may not be compatible with re-establishing a former wetland (Stedman 2003). Publicly owned land will likely have a management plan that should be reviewed to determine opportunities and restrictions on project implementation. Privately owned land may require negotiations for purchase or conservation easement.

### Land Ownership Impacts on Project Feasibility

The Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project near Sanibel Island, Florida, was both catalyzed and burdened by adjacent private landowners. Landowners surrounding Clam Bayou helped finance the project and were especially active during the project identification phase. However, intense public interest in the project also resulted in a higher sale price for the privately owned land required for construction. Negotiations with the landowner resulted in construction delays and elevated project costs.



*For more information, see the **Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Project Portfolio** (page 128).*



Questions to ask about landownership (*Toolkit* worksheet, page 173):

- *Is the land privately or publicly owned?* Determine whether landowners might be willing participants in the restoration effort, or whether they might be willing to sell their property.
- *Is adjacent land privately or publicly owned?* Consider whether the owners of surrounding areas will be supportive of neighboring restoration.
- *Is there nearby private or public infrastructure?* Identify any infrastructure that could potentially be impacted by restoration, or that might impede construction.
- *Will landownership restrict access to the project area?* Consider whether the project construction efforts will require large equipment, and whether landownership will influence equipment use or movement. If the site is publicly owned, research the management plan governing the property to determine whether public ownership could impose any limitations on project implementation.

**Project team.** The project team is the core group leading the restoration project, from feasibility analysis through project implementation and subsequent monitoring. Having a well-rounded team is a key factor in determining project feasibility. While building a project team, it is important to assemble a variety of expertise. For example, hydrologists, engineers, biologists and ecologists, regulatory staff, financial experts and accountants, project managers, outreach coordinators, and volunteers may all be valuable assets to a tidal hydrology restoration project team.

The team-building process should include identifying useful skill sets and tools beneficial to project planning and implementation. For instance, it might be useful for the team to include a member with connections to local community groups or with ready access to and understanding of GIS tools, hydrological models, or previous relevant research and datasets.

The project team should include both essential members (due to cost or expertise sharing) as well as strategic members who can facilitate political and community support. Give careful consideration to the specific needs of your project (i.e., engineering needs, hydrologic needs, and biological focus). Tentatively gauge the interests and skills of potential team members. Once there is a clearer understanding of who will participate in the project team, hold a brainstorming meeting and discuss overarching project ideas.

Here are some useful steps to consider in the early stages of project team development:

- Define the project area's known problem(s) and brainstorm potential project goals and objectives.
- Discuss a variety of options or designs for addressing the problem(s).
- Discuss any potential feasibility concerns and funding scenarios.
- Consider team roles and responsibilities. Ensure that people in identified areas of expertise will be available to support the project.
- Identify and rectify gaps in knowledge, skills, and resources.

Questions to ask about the project team (*Toolkit worksheet*, page 173):

- *Does the team possess the range of skills needed to plan a project that will meet restoration goals?* Determine if the project team in place is interdisciplinary with the appropriate representation of engineers, natural resource managers, scientists, accountants, and project managers. Ensure that the project team is prepared to move forward with planning and implementation.
- *Is the team adaptive?* An effective project team will brainstorm potential opportunities as well as roadblocks in order to build in project flexibility and ensure that the project can adapt to shifts in priorities or resources.



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning



**Partnerships.** Partnerships are those relationships developed with agencies, corporations, and nonprofit groups to provide support and resources to the project team through all stages of project implementation. Some partnering groups may have a relatively small role in project implementation and provide project advocacy, meeting space, or funding. Other partners may be actively engaged in project implementation and provide staff to serve as project team members. Advocacy provided by partners proves especially beneficial to tidal hydrology restoration projects where the footprint of the affected area is large, resulting in high visibility and the potential for direct impact to a wide range of stakeholders.

Questions to ask about partnerships (*Toolkit worksheet*, page 174):

- *What local, state, and federal partners are critical for providing technical support?* What agencies may already have site-specific data to inform decision-making and design? Consider private companies that have a reputation for supporting local restoration efforts. Encourage participation of organizations that may have in-house staff or equipment to help facilitate the project.
- *What local, state, and federal partners may be able to provide necessary funding or in-kind services?* Consider the technical expertise available through such agencies as well as potential funding opportunities. (See **Potential Funding Requirements and Sources** below for more information.)
- *What agencies or groups are vital for providing public education, advocacy and support?* Consider local non-governmental organizations (NGOs) with active members and volunteers.

**Local involvement.** The participation of and coordination among diverse public and private groups is a necessary component of successful restoration (RAE 2002). The most efficient and effective restoration projects are those supported by stakeholders in the local community. This includes support from local residents, nonprofit groups, state and federal agencies, local planning boards,

politicians, academics, contractors, and others. One project example emphasizing these ancillary benefits is the Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Texas. Tidal flow to the Bahia Grande basin had been severed, resulting in a vast dry area that was the source of frequent and harmful dust storms that impacted the health of local residents. Returning tidal flows to the area restored 6,500 acres of tidal wetland while also alleviating a source of major health problems and their associated expenses.



*For more information about building public support for tidal hydrology restoration projects, see **Chapter 8: Community Support***

Questions to ask about local involvement (*Toolkit worksheet*, page 173):

- *What is the project influence area/ geographic extent?* Understanding the geographic extent of the project will help identify both the potential impacts to the local community and all potential stakeholders.
- *Have you consulted project stakeholders?* Make sure to include potential stakeholders such as project partners, landowners, and the interested or affected public during project planning and design.

## Potential Funding Requirements and Sources

Though developing reasonable costs estimates can be difficult at the early stage of feasibility analysis, it is a good idea to estimate the scale of project funding required. You should consider categorizing funding needs according to stages of project implementation (i.e., identification, design, construction, etc.). You should also estimate the funding required for a few potential design scenarios (i.e., one large levee breach versus several small breaches with culverts). Contacting the project managers of the example projects included in this manual may be very useful for developing rough budgets (see the *Project Portfolios*, page 85).



Once the scale of funding is estimated, outline a general strategy for identifying and securing those funds (Borde et al. 2004). Below are some tips for developing a funding strategy:

- *Accomplish as much as possible with the minimal amount of resources.*
- *Consider how team member contributions will offset funding requirements.* For instance, a project with fewer partners may require hiring a consultant to handle community meetings or design and permitting. Other projects with more strategic partnerships may have team members capable of managing tasks without the need for a consultant.
- *Seek private contributions.* The most likely source is often private organizations or corporations rather than individuals. Sometimes private organizations will have funds set aside for community initiatives.
- *Consider pursuing public funding opportunities (i.e., state or county governments).* For example in Florida, the water management districts can be a source of public funding.
- *Evaluate the niche areas for different grant opportunities and apply for multiple grants.* For instance, NOAA's Community-based Restoration Program gives preference to projects that put the majority of funding toward physical implementation of fisheries habitat restoration activities. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) Coastal Program supports a broader array of project activities along the coast.



*A list of organizations involved with technical and financial support for restoration is available in the **Toolkit** (page 175).*

- *Approach academic institutions to discuss pre- and post-restoration monitoring ideas and options.* Undergraduate and graduate students can be a useful and cost-effective source of labor and can gain valuable work experiences for future careers through their involvement in pre- and post-restoration monitoring.



*A diverse partnership of academic institutions, government agencies, and NGOs led by the Friends of Huntington Beach State Park in South Carolina successfully achieved the goal of reintroducing tidal flow to Sandpiper Pond.*

Photo Credit: SC State Parks

- *Keep in mind that different funding agencies and organizations often have different missions, timing, and requirements.*

Questions to ask about funding (**Toolkit worksheet**, page 174)

- *What are the funding needs?* Determine the scale of required funding. Consider possible sources, whether from in-house capital, grants, private capital, or partnerships.
- *What funding strategies should be considered?* Determine what sources and strategies can be used to attain funding.

**Regulation and permitting.** Determine which agencies you will need to approach to obtain the required permits, and consider the most effective time to engage these agencies in the project process. Based on available information and team input, determine if the permitting environment will be favorable for project implementation.

Questions to ask about permitting (**Toolkit worksheet**, page 174):

- *What permits may be required?* Assess whether the permits are reasonably attainable and estimate the general time frame for receiving local, state, and federal authorization.



See **Chapter 5: Permitting** for more on permitting tidal hydrology projects.



- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 

PROJECT HIGHLIGHT

## St. Vincent Island Estuarine Habitat Restoration Project

*St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge, Franklin County, FL*

St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge (NWR) is a 12,000-acre barrier island located near Apalachicola Bay, Florida. The island is characterized by upland, freshwater, and estuarine habitats. Prior to becoming a NWR, the island was subjected to major hydrology modifications through the construction of 90 miles of road, largely put in place for private hunting expeditions more than 40 years ago.

In 2000, the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) completed a map report titled *Assessment of the effect of road construction and other modifications on surface-water flow at St. Vincent NWR, Franklin County, Florida*. In this report, USGS comprehensively evaluated the effects of road construction and identified priority restoration options to accomplish surface water–hydrologic wildlife habitat improvements. Field data collection was used to identify areas of road construction and other modifications that may have altered surface-water flow. The sites investigated were (1) road crossings that block creeks (2) road crossings or ditches that connect adjacent creeks; and (3) road crossings that could block saltwater movement in the creeks near the coast. Water flow and water conductivity measurements were collected at these locations and were used to generate a strategic plan for hydrology management and restoration. The goal of the NWR is to use this report to reduce the expanse of roads on the island by 50 percent.

In 2008, the NWR and its largely volunteer workforce implemented part of the plan. An estimated 1,925 acres of estuarine marsh is benefiting from the scrape-down of 4.6 miles of roads historically created on berms through the marsh, the construction of four low water crossings on one remaining 4.2 mile road, and the installation of a culvert under the road bed.



For more information on this project, see the **St. Vincent Island Estuarine Habitat Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 104).





**Top:**

*Roads constructed through the estuarine marsh altered tidal hydrology on St. Vincent Island National Wildlife Refuge near Apalachicola, FL. A series of activities, including road removal and the installation of a low water crossing and multiple culverts, were identified and implemented to restore estuarine tidal influence.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*

**Left:**

*Resource managers at the National Wildlife Refuge conduct an on-site project planning meeting.*

*Photo credit: USFWS*



# Chapter 3: Goals and Objectives



Goals and objectives (G&Os) are the foundation for all restoration projects. Developing good goals and objectives entails the careful consideration of site-specific characteristics. Often, restoration goals and objectives are shaped not only by the ecological conditions at the site but also by stakeholder interests in the project. Identification of goals and objectives directly informs the project design, construction, and scientific evaluation and allows for a more efficient and focused restoration process.

This chapter of the manual includes discussion of:

- The importance of goals and objectives;
- Methods for establishing goals and objectives;
- Common tidal hydrology restoration goals and objectives; and
- Goals and objectives highlight project: Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project, St Bernard Parish, Louisiana.

Additional resources for goals and objectives, as well as a summary of recommendations from this chapter, can be found in the *Toolkit* (page 176).

## Importance of Goals and Objectives

Clear goals and objectives provide the project team with the appropriate boundaries necessary to make decisions about the project and to expand the number of alternatives available to achieve the objectives (Steyer 2000).

However, establishing goals and objectives is often overlooked (National Research Council 1992, 1994) due to the misconception that all project team members have the same vision of the restoration project outcomes. However, given the range of potential partners, it is likely that the project team will have divergent interests.

## Stakeholder Interests Impact Restoration Goals and Objectives

Goals and objectives of the 15,100-acre South Bay Salt Ponds Project in California have accommodated a range of stakeholder interests. Many project partners focus on bird habitat restoration; NOAA is primarily interested in fisheries habitat, while other stakeholders advocate public accessibility. An example of how these divergent interests were incorporated into the goals and objectives was the creation of areas with varying water depths to support targeted bird and fish species, as well as a range of associated recreational activities.



*For more information on setting goals with partners, see **Chapter 2: Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning***

Project G&Os should be referenced during all phases of implementation, as they establish the project priorities and intended outcomes. Failure to define G&Os can result in a number of obstacles to project efficacy and efficiency that will resonate from project design through construction and scientific evaluation.

### *Why are G&Os important to the design phase?*

Goals and objectives:

- Aid in comparison of alternative design scenarios by helping the team create an effective cost-benefit analysis and choose the best design to achieve desired project outcomes.
- Help avoid confusion and disagreement among project team members when choosing a project design.



*Community residents, frustrated with declining conditions at Bishopville Pond in Worcester County, MD, teamed up with resource professionals to develop goals and objectives that eliminate aesthetic and water quality issues while restoring tidal flows beyond the existing dam..*

Photo Credit: © Google 2007; Satellite imagery by U.S Geological Survey

- Allow for a more efficient design process, saving time and reducing project costs. Communication between the project team and the designer or engineer will be more efficient.
- See **Chapter 4: Project Design** for more detail.
- Allow the construction contractor to participate in construction modifications through an improved understanding of the desired project outcomes.
- Help the project team choose the appropriate parameters to measure during the as-built monitoring (See **Chapter 7: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring**).

***Why are G&Os important to the construction phase?***

Goals and Objectives:

- Aid in making decisions about the most appropriate on-site design modifications. Delayed decisions can increase costs. Misguided decisions can impact project outcomes.
- Allow for **adaptive management** approaches for projects, or “learning by doing” (Walters 1986), in a structured rather than haphazard way” (Thom et al. 2005). Adaptive management protocols can increase the likelihood of reaching G&Os since they allow for necessary changes that may occur during or after the construction phase (see **Implementing Adaptive Management**, page 20). See **Chapter 6: Construction and Maintenance** for more detail.



## Goals and Objectives



### Implementing Adaptive Management

Adaptive management is an iterative approach to managing ecosystems, where the methods of achieving the desired objectives are unknown or uncertain (Holling 1978; Walters 1986). Using this approach, information gained through project monitoring is incorporated into future management actions. During the project planning stage, adaptive management should be used to refine goals and objectives and make changes to design plans as necessary. In the construction stage, adaptive management should be used to evaluate the need for changes to the original plans for specific components of the project, e.g., the number and types of plants, the configuration of channels or grading, or the amount of new soil brought to the site.

The Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Murrells Inlet, South Carolina, utilized adaptive management to achieve project goals. The project was originally designed to restore historic tidal flow to a small, isolated estuary by constructing an ocean inlet. After construction, it became apparent that the restored flows were inadequate to meet water quality goals. To address this challenge and meet the original water quality expectations, the project team designed and constructed an additional tidal connection in a new location.



For more information about adaptive management, see the references provided in the **Toolkit** (page 179).

#### Why are G&Os important to the scientific evaluation phase?

- Well defined G&Os will drive scientific evaluation of project outcomes. Reference sites, data collection, target values, and monitoring parameters should reflect specific G&Os (Diefenderfer et al. 2003). Since data collection should begin long before construction, the early development of G&Os is critical to implementation of a strong scientific evaluation plan (see **Chapter 7: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring**).

### Defining Project Goals and Objectives

- The **goal**, or vision, of a project is a general statement of the desired long-term ecological or biological outcomes (IWWR 2003). A goal statement should be simple and clear. Project **objectives** should be derived from the goal statement, defining specific, measurable targets. One goal may generate multiple objectives. Worksheets to help develop G&Os are available in the **Toolkit** (pages 177-178). Below is an example goal statement with three specific objectives statements.

#### Example:

##### Goal:

Re-establish a tidal connection through a spoil levee in order to restore salt marsh structure and function.

##### Objective 1:

Achieve tidal flooding of the marsh at a periodicity and depth comparable to nearby reference marshes within six months post-construction.

##### Reference marsh:

Semi-diurnal flooding periodicity;  
average flooding depth 0.4m

##### Target for restored marsh:

Semi-diurnal flooding periodicity;  
average flooding depth 0.4m +/- 0.1m

##### Objective 2:

Achieve an average surface water dissolved oxygen of 7.2 mg/L within six months post construction.

##### Reference marsh:

Dissolved oxygen 7.2 mg/L +/- 1.0 mg/L



*Target for restored marsh:*

Dissolved oxygen 7.2 mg/L +/- 1.5 mg/L

*Objective 3:*

Create habitat for six species of fish within one year post-construction

*Reference marsh:*

12 species of fish

*Target for restored marsh:*

Six species of fish within one year

***Tips for developing goals and objectives:***

- Consider a wide range of project objectives and prioritize those objectives according to the needs or desired outcomes of the specific project. Prioritizing objectives can help the project team analyze the cost-benefit of various design alternatives and determine the best use of limited funds for scientific evaluation. Prioritization can also be used to develop restoration phases in the event that full funding is not immediately available to complete implementation in one phase.
- Do not define G&Os too narrowly. Narrow objectives may result in a project that inadvertently slights one ecological function in favor of another. For example, a culvert of a certain size may be adequate to inundate an area of land, but may not be appropriately sized to allow for fish passage. Blending multiple objectives may result in wider constituent support.
- Consult local stakeholders when defining G&Os. Salt marsh restoration goals should reflect perceptions and values of residents, especially in areas of high population density (Casagrande 1997). Scientific working groups, regional planning documents, universities, and community planning organizations are potential resources.
- Recognize that objectives may change over time as community values or the site itself changes. This is not to suggest that objectives should be easily abandoned, but rather that project proponents should be realistic and flexible. Prioritizing objectives early in project planning will help the project team determine which project objectives can be more easily modified versus those that must be preserved.

## Meeting Multiple Objectives

Flooding of private property due to restricted tidal connection spurred the initial interest in the Little River Marsh Restoration Project in New Hampshire. A partnership between the local community and stakeholders representing fisheries habitat resulted in a project design that met multiple objectives, including fisheries habitat restoration and flood control.



For more information, see the **Little River Marsh Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 158).



*Two side-by-side 6x12 foot culverts replaced a 48-inch culvert connecting the Little River Marsh in New Hampshire to the Gulf of Maine.*

*Photo Credit: UNH*



PROJECT HIGHLIGHT

### Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Yscloskey, St. Bernard Parish, LA*

The Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in St. Bernard Parish, Louisiana, was completed in 2004 with funding from the Coastal Wetland Planning, Protection, and Restoration Act (CWPPRA). The total project area is over 3,800 acres with approximately 719 acres of open water and 3,086 acres of brackish and saline marsh, bottomland hardwoods, and bottomland scrub/shrub. An inoperable water control structure installed during the 1950s was adversely affecting wetlands in the project area. The reduced draining capacity of the water control structure resulted in increased depth and duration of flooding events, thereby reducing marsh vegetation and accelerating marsh loss. Extreme tides occasionally entered the project area and became impounded upstream of the structure. The failed water control structure also blocked fisheries access to the wetland.

The goals of this project were clarified early: to re-establish tidal exchange, relieve impoundment conditions, achieve a healthy hydroperiod, provide fisheries access, and reduce wetland loss rates. However, multiple project team meetings were held to identify specific objectives that would influence project design and operational procedures. Specific hydrology objectives identified were to decrease the duration of flooding events to allow high water to stand on the marsh for no longer than one week following a flood event and to mimic the hydroperiod (depth and duration) and salinity regime of a reference marsh. In regard to wetland loss rates, the objective was to maintain 99 percent of the pre-construction acres of vegetated wetland within the project area for 20 years. (Given the rate of wetland loss in Louisiana, most projects set a much lower objective.) In regard to fisheries access, the objective was to maintain or improve fisheries ingress and egress.

The project team also established a monitoring plan that evaluates most of these objectives. Three continuous recorder stations are located within the project area and two are located in reference locations. These stations record water depth and salinity. Results indicate that salinity inside the project area is less than one-half of a part per thousand lower than outside, which does not have a likely biological significance. Water depths have decreased in the project area as compared to depths prior to project construction, and the duration of flooding events meets the established objective. Comparison of the hydroperiod between the project and reference site has proven to be complicated as water depths at reference locations have increased since project construction. Results for wetland loss rates will be analyzed by comparing aerial photography collected in 2000 to photography planned for 2012 and 2022. No specific measures of fisheries utilization are being collected since it is assumed that fisheries access has improved as a result of open fish slots in the water control structure.



For more information, see the **Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 98).





**Left:**

*The water control structure installed at the Hopedale Project in Barnard Parish, Louisiana, incorporated three flap gates and two fish gates to improve hydrology and allow for fisheries access to more than 3,000 acres of wetland.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*

**Below:**

*The goals of the Hopedale project in Barnard Parish, LA, were to re-establish tidal exchange, relieve impoundment conditions, achieve a healthy hydro-period, provide fisheries access, and reduce wetland loss rates.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*





# Chapter 4: Project Design



The **design phase** is initiated when the project site has been identified and the restoration goals and objectives defined. The design phase will evaluate the potential range of restoration techniques capable of achieving the desired project objectives. Design options should be continually evaluated against the project goals and objectives.

This section describes multiple design considerations, tools, and tips, including:

- Significant physical, ecological, and feasibility design parameters;
- Design techniques, application, pros and cons;
- Design considerations in context of sea level rise;
- Hydrology modeling as a tool for project design; and
- Project design highlight project: Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project, Cameron County, TX.

Additional project design resources and summary recommendations can be found in the *Toolkit* (page 180).

## Ecological and Physical Design Parameters

There are a number of key site-specific ecological and physical parameters that will influence project design (*Table 4a*, opposite). Before developing a design strategy, the project team should have a complete understanding of the historic and current ecological and physical conditions of the site. It is important for the project team to have an understanding of these parameters before the potential results of any design can be evaluated, and before alternative design options can be compared for cost-benefit analysis.

*The necessity of moving all equipment and materials by barge to the island project site resulted in some unique logistical challenges for the St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge Hydrology Restoration Project.*

Photo Credit: USFWS

## The Importance of a Site Base-Map

A site base-map that highlights habitat types, tidal streams, adjacent land uses, infrastructure, and other key physical parameters is a highly recommended tool for the project design phase (Neckles et al. 2002). Such maps provide the team with an overview for quick reference and comprehensive conceptual planning. The same map will also be useful for implementing effective monitoring or contingency plans.

## Design Feasibility Considerations

Design feasibility considerations are the site-specific characteristics that most directly impact the practicality of alternative designs. Site characteristics such as sediment stability, landownership, funding, and stakeholder input can all impact project feasibility and require adjustments to design, goals, and objectives (*Table 4b*, page 26).

Once the project goals and objectives are determined, ecological and physical parameters of the site are known, a base-map is developed, and the feasibility considerations indicate there is potential for successful project implementation, the team should begin an earnest evaluation of the range of design strategies available for tidal hydrology restoration projects.





**Table 4a. Ecological and physical site parameters critical to project design.**

Ecological Parameter	Importance to Project Design
<b>Tidal prism</b> (range in volume of water from high to low tide)	The volume of water moving through the site under current conditions will influence design components, including size and location of breaches and tidal channels.
<b>Flow velocity</b>	Flow velocity will influence design options with regard to appropriate sizes for breaches or culvert structures.
<b>Salinity regime</b>	Salinity strongly influences distribution of plant and animal communities as well as soil characteristics. Understanding the current salinity regime will aid in developing appropriate targets for post-restoration salinity regimes. Soil or interstitial salinities should also be investigated for proper plant selections.
<b>Tidal footprint</b>	The expanse of area currently influenced by tidal inundation is important information for engineering and modeling efforts. Effects should be modeled for both the existing and projected areas of influence (including trends in sea level rise). It is possible that negative impacts could result from redirecting water flow from its current location.
<b>Freshwater inflows</b> (surface and ground)	Sources, locations, and volumes of freshwater inflows will influence the ecological function in a restored site and must be considered during the design. They will also influence water retention within the site and potential flooding concerns of adjacent property.
<b>Surface elevation</b>	The topography and bathymetry within and around the site will impact the movement and location of water, influencing soil types, plant and habitat types. Project design may entail alteration of existing elevations, as appropriate, to meet goals and objectives. It should also account for any local trends in land subsidence.
<b>Plant communities</b>	Locations and types of plant communities provide insight into soil characteristics and typical flooding patterns. Locations of exotic and native species should also be considered. It may be desirable to design a project that preserves native plant communities (especially coastal upland, maritime forest, and high marsh plant communities – see <b>Designing for Sea Level Rise</b> on page 30).
<b>Species composition</b> (faunal and vegetation, threatened and endangered)	Vegetation and faunal community composition will be a critical factor in the permitting phase of the project. It is important to understand the community composition so potential impacts of a design can be analyzed prior to submitting permitting applications.
<b>Soil characteristics</b>	Soil characteristics will provide insight into current flooding patterns and can be useful in researching any potential historic soil contamination. Historic data may also help the project team locate the best location for restoring tidal connections or wetland communities based on former hydric soil locations. Soil characteristics are also a critical engineering factor in terms of stability, subsidence, and seepage which could affect structural design and support.
<b>Climate</b>	Seasonal wind and barometric pressure, frequency of droughts and storms, etc. can affect hydrological patterns and wetland survivability. Having an understanding of the local seasonal extremes may be helpful in designing projects.
<b>Adjacent lands</b>	Land cover, use, and ownership of adjacent lands are important design considerations. Land cover (and habitat functionality) will directly influence the ecological outcomes at the project site. Landownership (private or public) and use may provide for a range of design considerations, including public access, adjacent development activities, and future downstream and upstream impacts to the project site.



## Project Design

**Table 4b. Key feasibility considerations for project design.**



Feasibility Considerations	Importance / Implications
<b>Accessibility for construction equipment</b>	Site location is critical to accessibility of construction equipment. Carefully consider sites on islands, surrounded by or near highly sensitive environments, surrounded by private property, or surrounded by or composed of very soft/wet sediments. These factors can limit or impede project construction and equipment accessibility. Alternatives to typical heavy equipment construction methods may be warranted. For more on construction considerations, see <b>Chapter 6: Construction and Maintenance</b> .
<b>Sediment stability</b>	Sediment stability can impact site accessibility, as well as permitting and turbidity concerns during and following project implementation. It is also important in terms of supporting hard design features such as water control structures. Analysis of sediment samples may be required.
<b>Private landowner and leaseholder issues</b>	Consider landownership and use of both the project site and surrounding land, as well as any effects of the project on landowners and leaseholders, and vice versa. Consider engaging a real estate attorney to address these issues.
<b>Cost and funding availability</b>	Certain designs may be possible, but not practical in terms of cost-benefit analysis. An evaluation of potential funding opportunities may help establish achievable funding ranges.
<b>Timing</b>	The time may or may not be right to pursue restoration at a specific project site. For instance, a specific design may be the best and only reasonable alternative for a site; however, the opportunity to pursue restoration may have to wait for certain issues to be resolved (i.e., permitting concerns, political climate, landownership, development pressures, or pending funding opportunities).
<b>Stakeholder input and concerns</b>	Local residents, the larger community, and other stakeholders may have some specific concerns or interests that must be considered in the project design phase. Frequently, project design can be modified based on public input, but still achieve the stated goals and objectives of the project.

CONSIDER

### Location Effects on Project Feasibility

Equipment accessibility to St. Vincent’s National Wildlife Refuge was the biggest hurdle to restoring nearly 2,000 acres of estuarine marsh at this site. The Wildlife Refuge is located on an island only accessible by boat. The remote location of the barge docking site in relation to the project, in addition to weight limits on the barge, complicated transport of equipment and materials. Considerations such as these directly impacted feasibility and logistical planning.



## Active and Passive Design Strategies

We propose that design strategies for tidal hydrology restoration projects can be categorized as either passive or active.

**Passive design strategies** entail a one-time action resulting in a self-sustaining system with little long-term intervention. Tidal hydrology restoration projects of this type typically have a relatively small area of construction activity to reintroduce or enhance tidal flow, allowing a larger area to restore naturally over time.

Passive approaches are most appropriate when the degraded site still retains basic wetland characteristics and the source of the degradation is an action that can be stopped. The benefits of passive design methods include low cost and a high degree of certainty that the resulting wetland will be compatible with the surrounding landscape (Stedman 2003). For example, the Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Pinellas County, Florida, removed a section of causeway and replaced it with a 40-foot span bridge. This action and small footprint of work resulted in the enhancement and rehabilitation of 1,000 acres of seagrass with no hands-on restoration work in the seagrass habitat.

**Active design strategies** entail more intensive construction activities and are typically characterized by the active operation of structures and regular long-term maintenance needed to achieve project goals. One benefit of active management of projects is that it provides the project team flexibility to manipulate restoration sites over time (Steyer 2000). Examples of active design strategies include the installment of a water control feature such as a tidegate, tidal creek creation, or other major land alterations.



*For more details on tidegate installation and tidal creek creation, see the **Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 98) and the **Little River Marsh Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 158).*

Sometimes, when a wetland is severely degraded or when goals cannot be achieved in any other way, an active strategy is the only realistic and effective approach. However, passive strategies should be the preferred approach when possible. Even a passive or unmanaged design may require active management initially, but it will ideally evolve to demand little to no active involvement in perpetuity. Keep in mind an individual project may contain both active and passive elements.

When evaluating each design strategy, project managers should consider the life span of each project design technique. For example, after installing a tidegate to manage the hydrologic regime, how long will it function before needing replacement? Certain design strategies will need more frequent monitoring, repair, or replacement. Be sure to incorporate these considerations into the project's long-term design and construction maintenance plan.



*For more on incorporating design considerations into construction and maintenance, see **Chapter 6: Construction and Maintenance***

**Table 4c** on the next page includes a variety of tidal restoration design strategies, a description of when these might be applied, and the pros and cons of each strategy.

## Design Strategies and Societal Interests

Societal issues may also be a factor in determining the extent to which you pursue an active design strategy. For example, many areas on the east coast of Florida were impounded for mosquito control in the 1950s and 1960s. The need for mosquito management is still relevant today and restoration of these impoundments often incorporates water control devices and time-of-year operating plans – both of which are examples of active design strategies.



*For an example, see the **Wildcat Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 140).*



## Project Design

**Table 4c. Design strategies, application, pros and cons.**



Design Strategy	Application
<b>Culvert Placement</b> (Passive)	Useful in situations where water flow has been restricted but passage over the flow point is still required (i.e., roads, walking paths). Multiple culverts can be strategically placed around the site or grouped together. For shallow water sites with the goal of re-establishing sheet flow, multiple smaller pipes are sometimes superior because they more effectively mimic sheet flow characteristics.
<b>Culvert Replacement or Repair</b> (Passive)	This design strategy is typical in situations where the earlier placement of culvert(s) failed due to breakage or inadequate size.
<b>Bridge Installation</b> (Passive)	Useful in situations where water flow has been restricted, but passage over the flow point is still required (i.e., roads, walking paths). Typically this method is used only for small-scale footbridges (inexpensive and easily engineered) or large-scale bridges. Medium-scale projects would likely use a culvert(s) since they are less expensive and easier to engineer than bridges.
<b>Barrier Breach</b> (i.e., holes in the levee) (Passive)	Appropriate for impounded areas where foot or vehicle passage is not required across the impoundment edge (but might be required in some locations around the site). Multiple breaches may be placed strategically around the impoundment and aligned with tidal creeks.
<b>Barrier Removal</b> (i.e., degradation of the entire levee wall) (Passive)	Appropriate for impounded areas where foot or vehicle passage is not required around the site. Especially appropriate in locations where an earthen impoundment was created using borrowed materials from the interior site. Refilling those interior borrow areas with the degraded levee wall will assist in achieving elevation targets.
<b>Ditch Filling or Plugging</b> (Passive)	Used to improve and/or enhance wetland hydrology in areas that have been channelized to facilitate drainage (typically for agriculture and mosquito control).
<b>Tidal Creek Creation</b> (Passive or Active)	Used to facilitate water flow to different points throughout the site. Typically applicable to tidal wetlands. Size (width and depth) will depend on the overall size of the site, the amount of water conveyed, and the tidal range at the location. The width and depth of tidal creeks should be comparable to similar natural systems (Zeff 1999). <i>Tip: Use the fewest necessary to accomplish project goals.</i>
<b>Mosaic Habitat Creation</b> (i.e., the incorporation of various microhabitats into the project) (Passive or Active)	Typically applicable to larger tidal wetlands sites where it would be possible to create multiple microhabitats and transition zones.
<b>Sediment Grading and/or Elevation Alterations</b> (Passive or Active)	Grading may be required in sites where excess sediments have been deposited, leaving the site at elevations inappropriate for wetland function. In impounded areas, it might actually be necessary to supply additional sediments since compaction of the sediment over time often results in lower elevation than required to support wetland vegetation.
<b>Water Control Structures</b> (i.e., tide gates and weirs) (Active)	Appropriate for project sites where strict management of water levels is required (i.e., mosquito management, flood control, migratory fowl habitat) or seasonal impacts require the complete control of water regimes for salinity, water level, timing (seasonal objectives), or biological controls.
<b>Broad-crested Earthen Weir</b> (i.e., flat crested or overflow dam, earthen and vegetated) (Passive or Active)	This design strategy is typically incorporated into tidal hydrology restoration projects that seek to increase the residence time of freshwater in low salinity marsh environments, while simultaneously providing a point of overflow.



Pros	Cons
Typically less expensive than a bridge for locations where passage over the flow point is required; often an inexpensive and highly effective way to introduce or enhance flow. Easily installed. Some municipalities have the in-house capability to construct and maintain this work without contracting.	May clog with organic debris, oysters, or fouling organisms. Undersized culverts can restrict adequate flow. Velocities of flow through the restriction point may not be appropriate for fish passage. Sometimes culverts fail or break if exposed to heavy loads. There are also inevitable costs associated with maintenance and replacement .
Same as culvert placement pros above.	Same as culvert placement cons above. If failure occurred previously, consider whether this method is appropriate for the site.
Typically designed to allow higher volume of flow since bridges have less height restriction than culverts. Flow under a bridge may be less restricted than through a culvert, potentially providing lower velocities and increased fisheries access. Allows for tidal exchange between areas where culverts would not be adequate.	Bridges capable of relaying vehicles and equipment are typically expensive, requiring careful engineering and construction techniques. Bridge construction would not be feasible for most municipality in-house capabilities. Long-term maintenance and/or replacement depend on lifespan of materials.
Size of the breach can be variable. Breaches are inexpensive and generally not dependent on material availability (unlike culverts). Long-term maintenance is much lower than culverts or bridges where replacement would eventually be required.	The size of the breach must be adequate to prevent scour, and the design should accommodate for potential scour and sedimentation that would affect the planned invert of the breach.
No long-term maintenance of the wall required. Site experiences fully restored tidal flow. Elevation in borrow areas (area from which sediment was historically removed or "borrowed" to create barrier) is restored (or material can be used to create some transitional high marsh or mosaic habitats).	More expensive than individual breaches of the wall due to handling of soil. Equipment access impacts may be too great to justify complete removal.
Extremely cost effective means to rehydrate large areas.	Must closely model the impounded areas to ensure adjacent property owners will not be directly or indirectly impacted by standing or flood waters (creating wetland communities adjacent to property owners is also a concern).
Facilitates fisheries access into the wetland site and the habitat edge preferred by many species. Facilitates flood and ebb into the site. Also provides avifaunal habitat.	If not properly designed, tidal creeks can fill in with sediment or organic debris. Sheet flow through a wetland is also important, so too many tidal creeks may rapidly drain the site. Appropriate elevation and topography is critical to success. For more information see Williams et al. 2002.
Provides an ecosystem approach that allows for some natural adaptations and potential adjustments in relation to sea level rise.	Use of this design strategy can complicate the design process, as it requires a more careful consideration of short-term management to ensure that invasive vegetation does not exploit some areas.
Sediment grading is typically inexpensive. Can use over-burden to create some transitional high marsh and upland areas.	Adding or removing sediment can be expensive due to material handling costs, and quality soil may not be readily available. Also, the organic content and salinity of the source material must be closely monitored to ensure site objectives. Determining elevations appropriate to support objectives is critical to project success.
Allows for tidal flow and fisheries access during times of year when other issues are not of concern (examples listed at left).	An active management plan is required that describes how and when the water control feature will be operated and who will be in charge of operation and maintenance. Water control structures have a shorter lifespan than other options (due to mechanical complexity). Depending on the management plan, ecological succession within the site may not closely mimic natural conditions and value as fisheries habitat may be compromised.
Low cost to construct. Allow for increased residence time and distribution of water-mimicking sheet flow conditions; virtually maintenance free.	Weirs must be constructed at precise elevations to achieve desired effects. A weak point in the weir could breach and must be built to withstand infrequent (but likely) major rain fall events and water flows; may require use of geoweb materials.



### Designing for Sea Level Rise (SLR)

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) has estimated that global SLR (the vertical change in mean ocean level) is occurring at the rate of approximately 1.8 mm/year and will increase to about 3.8 mm/year by 2100 (Meehl et al. 2007). Along most of the Southeastern U.S. coast, the rate of relative SLR will be even greater than the global rate because the elevation of the land is decreasing due to subsidence at the same time that the ocean levels are rising. As a result, rates of relative SLR along the Southeastern U.S. ranged from approximately 3 to 3.5 mm/year during the 20th century (Titus and Narayanan 1995) and likely will accelerate as SLR rates increase through the 21st century.

Tidal wetlands, whether natural, created, or restored, have the potential to grow vertically by accumulating mineral (i.e., sediments) and organic materials (e.g., plant detritus, roots). This vertical accretion is critical to coastal habitats since the distribution of plants across the wetland landscape, and whether plants can persist in the wetland, are largely functions of the depth and duration of flooding of the marsh surface. Thus, insufficient vertical accretion (compared to rates of relative SLR) could result in losses of the functions and services provided by tidal wetlands. Other determinants of tidal marsh quantity and spatial distribution that may be influenced by SLR are the rate of marsh erosion and the potential for the marsh to migrate inland. Depending on local conditions, a tidal marsh may be lost or migrate landward in response to SLR (Shellenbarger Jones et al. 2009).

Coastal resource managers are beginning to promote, and some agencies are even requiring, that predictions about SLR at individual locations be considered in conservation planning efforts. Predicting relative SLR rates and vertical wetland accretion at any given location is a complicated process requiring expert

knowledge of geomorphology and sedimentation, organic matter production and retention, sediment budgets, elevation, regional and local-scale subsidence, hydrology, climatology, and other processes/factors. Some experts believe that site-specific model projections of wetland vulnerability to SLR are quite good when information about these local factors/processes that control local accretion (in specific wetland settings) is incorporated (Cahoon et al. 2009).

While it may not be realistic to expect that all potential tidal hydrology restoration projects will have data, models, and resources to make such predictions, there are some effects of SLR that should generally be anticipated and incorporated into tidal hydrology restoration designs.

- **SLR could have secondary effects on the tidal hydrodynamics of coastal and tidal estuaries, inlets, and sounds.** If SLR results in an increase of tidal flow at the entrance, an increase in the tidal range (higher highs and lower lows) and tidal currents could result. The degree of tidal range changes will also be influenced by changes in channel depths or widths, potentially brought about by SLR and other processes (Nicholls et al. 2007). If anticipating changes in tidal range, consider incorporating extreme edge elevations into design plans that are slightly higher and slightly lower than would be the appropriate targets for today.
- **SLR will result in increased frequency and duration of inundation of wetland surfaces during normal tides and present day storm surges.** Yet, the coupling of SLR effects with potential climate change effects on coastal storms is an area of ongoing research. Current research does point to a potential increase in storm intensity due to climate change but not necessarily storm frequency (Trenberth et al.

CONSIDER



2007). Project designs should consider the potential for more frequent and severe storm surge flooding, especially if private property and infrastructure lie adjacent to the project site. Private parties may increasingly resist tidal hydrology restoration if concerns about property protection are not incorporated into project design.

- **Relative SLR at some locations throughout the Southeastern U.S. are already near or greater than 3 mm/yr, and the rate of SLR is expected to increase in the future.**

(See NOAA's Sea Levels Online web site at <http://co-ops.nos.noaa.gov/sltrends/index.shtml>). When possible, especially for larger sites, incorporate gradual slopes and a mosaic of habitats to allow for on-site habitat migration as a hedge against SLR. Incorporation of freshwater, upland, high marsh, and transition zones might allow the site to be more adaptable to changing conditions. This means that you also need to be aware of surrounding land use conditions such as expanses of impervious surfaces that may inhibit habitat migration.



**Top:**

*The red areas above identify a large expanse of Coastal Louisiana that may be susceptible to a 1 meter rise in sea level.*

*Map by Weiss and Overpeck, University of Arizona*

**Below:**

*Modeled sea level rise at Waterfront Park in downtown Charleston, South Carolina. Using CanVis, an image (left) was modified to demonstrate the potential visual impacts of sea level rise (right). CanVis is a free and easy-to-use software program that can help coastal professionals generate visualizations to show the potential impacts of coastal change and development on their communities*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*





## Project Design

### Hydrology Modeling in Project Design



**Hydrology models** are simplified, conceptual representations of a part of the hydrologic cycle including water distribution, movement, and quality. When applied to a restoration design, hydrology models can assist in the evaluation of potential improvements in water quality (i.e., dissolved oxygen and salinity) and habitat types (Boumans et al. 2002) associated with restoration alternatives. However, modeling can also be a complex process involving data acquisition and numerical computer methods that require significant scientific expertise.



*Several modeling resources are available in the **Toolkit** (page 180), including recommended modeling inputs, hydrology modeling tips, additional design resources, and hydrological modeling software summaries.*

#### **When is a model needed?**

There are a number of reasons why the project team may require a model to evaluate restoration design implications.

- The higher the risk of project failure, the greater the need for a model. For instance, if there is a significant risk that private property might flood with a flawed design – and the evaluation of alternative designs would decrease that potential – then the need for a model increases. Relative risk of project failure may also be a cost consideration. Inexpensive projects that could be easily modified using adaptive management may not require the accurate predictions of a model. However, it might be prudent to rely on some accurate models for projects with high construction costs.
- The more complex the tidal flow is in an area, the greater the need will be for a model to inform the project design.
- The greater the level of uncertainty regarding project benefits and impacts to both existing and planned water receiving basins, the higher the justification for a model.

- Permitting agencies often request modeling results to predict likely outcomes and impacts associated with more complex projects. Similarly, funding agencies may have more confidence in projects that provide modeled outputs.

#### **What kind of site-specific data are required to develop a model?**

(See page 181 in the **Toolkit** for recommended modeling inputs.)

- Timescale of water pulsing events at the site. This might include river switching (thousands of years), major river flooding (50-100 years), major storms (5-10 years), average river floods (annual), normal storm events (weekly), and tidal periodicity (daily).
- Bathymetry and topography.
- Typical rainfall, evaporation, and runoff.
- Predicted or relative sea level rise.
- For models with water quality prediction capability, current data on salinity, dissolved oxygen, etc. will be required.

#### **What types of models are most appropriate to your needs?**

The type of hydrological model used should depend on the scale, size, and complexity of the restoration project. Before engaging modelers and expending project resources, be sure to know what outputs you want from the model so the modeler can determine the appropriate model for your project. For instance, the team may need to know the exact footprint of the area to be flooded, the depth of flooding, and the resultant salinity regime.

Though there are benefits to hydrological modeling, modeling activities for small or simple projects can inflate design costs that might be better applied to construction or monitoring. If modeling is a requirement for securing funding, the project team may want to discuss this issue with funding agency representatives and explain how these types of requests can limit funds available for other more important activities.

## Tips for Modeling for Project Design

Dr. Hassan Mashriqui with NOAA's National Weather Service Office of Hydrologic Development offers the following advice for modeling and project design:

If a model is pursued during design, use the simplest scale model that provides the needed answers for the project. One-dimensional and two-dimensional models are likely adequate for most tidal hydrology restoration projects.

**One-dimensional (1D) models** are the least expensive, easiest to use, and best models for small project areas. These models incorporate information such as the tidal boundary footprint, elevation, and tidal input. However, one-dimensional models cannot characterize cross-stream conditions.

**Two-dimensional (2D) models** are needed to depict lateral and over-marsh flow (inputs of tide, freshwater flow, rainwater input, and evaporation).

Information on salt wedge/saltwater intrusion often necessitates the use of **three-dimensional (3D) models**, which require significantly more data than other models.

*(Hassan Mashriqui, personal communication, 2009)*

Below are some specific points of consideration when choosing the appropriate hydrology model for your project.

- The simplest scale model that is appropriate and needed for the project should be used.
- Modeling may help the project team decide between alternative project designs.
- Group discussions may be just as useful as a model in terms of predictive power.
- Project risk – or a high cost of failure – may dictate the use of modeling.
- Expensive models may be more precise, but they may not be accurate or necessary for the project at hand.
- Models can be invaluable for helping to get projects approved through the regulatory permitting process, in particularly running models for the 100-year floodplain, potential direct and secondary impacts on federally protected species, and long-term benefits to habitat areas of particular concern.
- Models must address all water input and output, at a minimum. The project team may consider a literature review to help gather these data in the particular project area.
- Bathymetric and topographic data at an appropriate resolution are needed. Recent data are often required given the ever-changing nature of estuarine environments. Models are only as good as the data used to generate them.



## Project Design



PROJECT HIGHLIGHT

### Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project *Bahia Grande, Cameron County, TX*

The Bahia Grande is an 11,000-acre complex of three estuarine basins between Brownsville and Port Isabel in Cameron County, Texas. Once a highly productive shallow water system, the tidal flow was cut off in the 1930s by massive spoil banks left over from dredging the Brownsville Ship Channel. The estuarine basin began converting to a salty sand flat. The interruption of the natural hydrologic connection caused a decline in biological productivity of the tidal flats and loss of wildlife dependent on this productivity. The Bahia Grande dried up and its drifting sands caused numerous health and industrial problems for nearby communities. After several decades, a partnership was formed to re-flood the Bahia Grande and restore the health of its ecological systems and its nearby residents.

The project team began the project design process by gathering information to characterize the area. A wealth of baseline biological data was collected to help facilitate the design and evaluation processes. Native American cultural heritage sites were considered before selection of construction locations. A topographic survey was carried out that indicated most of the Bahia Grande basin lies below mean sea level and could be inundated with seawater during low tides. During high tides, storm surges, or periods of high rainfall, additional acreage would also receive tidal flow.

To help create the most efficient design, a hydrologic modeling study was conducted that examined the effects of channel design and wind effects on water flow, circulation, and the mixing needed to achieve biological productivity goals. Individual and multiple breaches and channels at different locations were analyzed. With this information, the project team adopted a passive restoration strategy that involved creating a series of channels through several barriers within the system, designed to take advantage of the normal tidal regime in the area. The small construction footprint provided a great impact to an extensive area for a relatively inexpensive cost.

The final design plan involved the construction of a 2,400-foot-long main channel that connects Bahia Grande to the source of tidal waters. Originally constructed as a pilot channel at 60 feet wide and 9 feet below mean sea level, it will eventually be widened to 210 feet. This channel was also designed so that prevailing winds from the southeast facilitate maximum tidal inundation of the basin. In addition to this main channel, other channels were created to connect Bahia Grande to two adjacent tidal basins: Laguna Larga (1,669 acres) and Little Laguna Madre (1,411 acres). These two smaller basins were also connected by a 5,000-foot-long channel to enhance circulation between the two basins. Other channels have been designed but, due to budgetary limitations and permitting challenges, they have not been constructed to date.



For more information, see the **Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 92).





**Top:**  
*A 2,400-foot pilot channel was constructed to return tidal flow after nearly 70 years to the 11,000-acre Bahia Grande Estuary complex in Cameron County, TX.*

**Below:**  
*Before and after photos show the expansive dry basin that was reflooded when tidal waters returned.*

*Photo credits: NOAA*



# Chapter 5: Permitting and Regulatory Compliance



Prior to construction, projects that have the potential to impact existing physical and ecological conditions, federally managed fish and invertebrates, or protected species under the Endangered Species Act are subject to regulatory review by federal, state, or local natural resource agencies. Even beneficial barrier removal projects intended to increase tidal circulation patterns are required to undergo regulatory review to ensure the project serves the public interest while balancing a diverse set of physical, ecological, and socioeconomic criteria. Project teams should account for permitting costs and time when planning and implementing tidal hydrology restoration projects.

This chapter provides background information on specific legislation, and provides recommendations to help navigate the regulatory compliance process. Specific topics covered in these pages include:

- General introduction to federal legislation regulating tidal hydrology restoration;
- Coordination between state and federal regulatory agencies; and
- Considerations for successfully navigating the review and permitting process.

Additional permitting resources and summary recommendations can be found in the *Toolkit* (page 184).

## An Introduction to Federal and State Authorization

The **permitting process** (*Figure 1*, opposite) requires coordination across state and federal agencies, as well as interaction between agencies and the people applying for a permit. Permitting processes and regulations vary by state and permitting issue. In general, the five permitting issues for tidal hydrology restoration projects are:

- Community development (i.e., coastal zone compliance);
- Water quality;
- Threatened and endangered species;
- Fish and wildlife; and
- Wetlands.

The permitting process is framed by federal legislation; however, oversight is generally conducted at both the state and national levels. Consequently, most permitting issues have more than one agency that provides regulatory review. For example, restoration and protection of, or impacts to, wetlands are subject to several federal and state authorizations, and therefore are regulated by several agencies. To help simplify regulation and streamline the permitting process for the applicant, federal

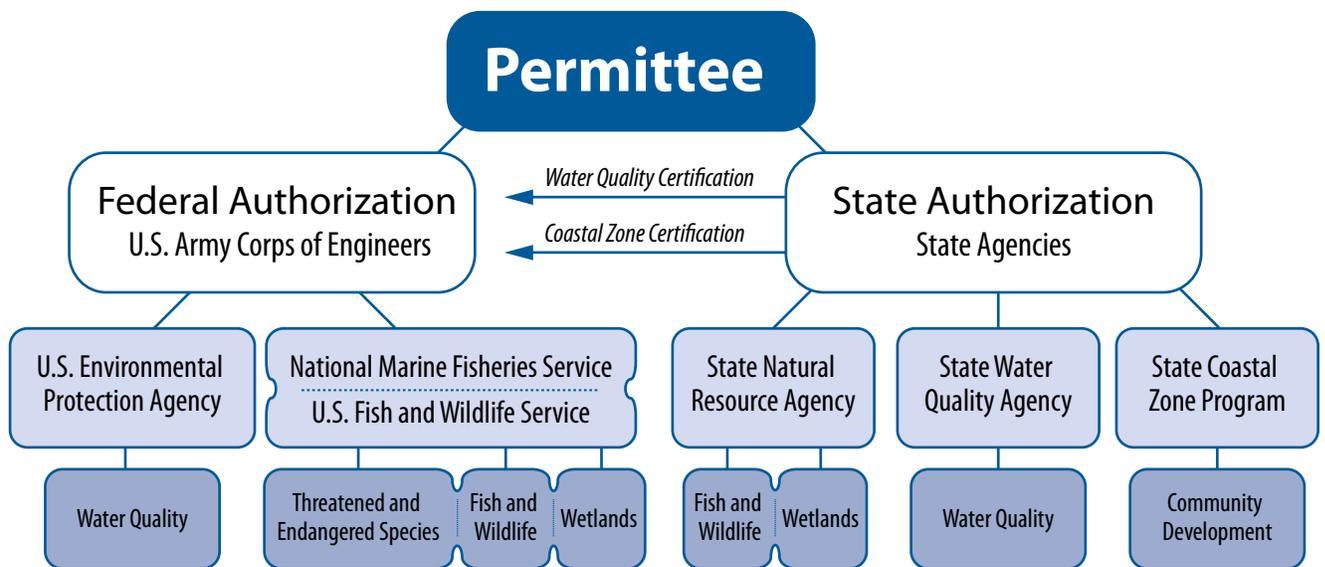
### Useful Acronyms

<b>ACHP</b>	Advisory Council on Historic Preservation
<b>CWA</b>	Clean Water Act
<b>CZMA</b>	Coastal Zone Management Act
<b>EA</b>	Environmental Assessment
<b>EFH</b>	Essential Fish Habitat
<b>EIS</b>	Environmental Impact Statement
<b>EPA</b>	Environmental Protection Agency
<b>ESA</b>	Endangered Species Act
<b>FMC</b>	Fisheries Management Councils
<b>JPA</b>	Joint Permit Application
<b>NEPA</b>	National Environmental Policy Act
<b>NHPA</b>	National Historic Preservation Act
<b>NMFS</b>	National Marine Fisheries Service
<b>NOAA</b>	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
<b>NWP</b>	Nationwide Permit
<b>RHA</b>	Rivers and Harbor Act
<b>SHPO</b>	State Historic Preservation Office
<b>USACE</b>	United States Army Corps of Engineers
<b>USFWS</b>	United States Fish & Wildlife Service



The use of sediment curtains to control turbidity was one of the best management practices employed to meet permitting requirements during construction of the Fort DeSoto Park Hydrology Restoration Project.

Photo credit: NOAA



**Figure 1. Federal and state permitting.**

Simplification of federal and state authorities related to specific resource issues. State regulatory agencies primarily handle coastal zone compliance and water quality issues; federal regulatory agencies handle authorization related to threatened and endangered species; and both state and federal regulators handle authorization related to fish, wildlife, and wetlands.



## Permitting and Regulatory Compliance



and state agencies have developed procedures where the submission of a single permit application triggers reviews by multiple state and federal agencies, referred to as a Joint Permit Application (JPA). In order to navigate the permitting process efficiently, the project team should be familiar with the laws that dictate the regulatory process, and the role each agency plays. Below is a list of the major federal legislation typically affecting tidal hydrology restoration projects.



*A list of federal policies, websites, and legislative citations is available in the **Toolkit** (page 185).*

**Rivers and Harbors Act and the Clean Water Act.** Cornerstones of the hydrology restoration federal permitting process are the Rivers and Harbors Act (RHA) and the Clean Water Act (CWA). Compliance with these acts requires authorization from the Secretary of the Army, acting through the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). Under the RHA, authorization is required for the construction of any structure in or over navigable waters of the United States. Under Section 404 of the CWA, authorization is required for discharge of dredged or fill material into any waters of the United States, including wetlands. In almost all cases, USACE addresses both authorizations by issuing a single permit (for example, via Nationwide Permit 27, see sidebar, opposite). However, before a permit is issued, in most cases, USACE coordinates with other federal and state agencies that have mandates to provide oversight and key contributions in their respective areas of expertise. Some of the more relevant acts that mandate the oversight roles of these federal and state agencies are described below.

**Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act.** This act mandates NOAA's National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), regional fishery management councils (FMCs), and other federal agencies to identify and protect important marine and anadromous fish habitat, known as "essential fish habitat" (EFH). Federal or state action agencies that fund, permit, or carry out activities that may adversely affect EFH are

required to consult with NOAA regarding the potential impacts of their actions on EFH, and respond in writing to any NOAA or FMC EFH conservation recommendations. Where appropriate, NOAA uses existing interagency coordination processes to fulfill EFH consultations with action agencies.

**Endangered Species Act.** The Endangered Species Act (ESA) intends to protect species threatened with extinction and the critical habitat upon which they rely. The U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service (USFWS) administers ESA review for freshwater and terrestrial species, while NMFS administers review for marine species. Both agencies may be involved for species that migrate between habitats or spend portions of their life cycle in water and on land. Under Section 7 of ESA, federal agencies such as USACE cannot issue a permit for activities that adversely affect threatened or endangered species or their critical habitat.



*An example template used for ESA consultation is available in the **Toolkit** (page 186).*

**Coastal Zone Management Act.** The Coastal Zone Management Act (CZMA) requires that any federal action inside or outside of the coastal zone that affects any land or water use or natural resources of the coastal zone shall be consistent, to the maximum extent practicable, with the enforceable policies of approved state management programs. It states that no federal license or permit may be granted without giving the state the opportunity to concur that the project is consistent with the state's coastal policies. State coastal zone agencies provide their certification either through interagency coordination processes, the federal permitting agency or, in some instances, directly to applicants or other state agencies representing public interest in the project.

State agencies also play additional roles beyond those established by the CZMA. For example, for a project to be authorized under the CWA, it must receive a water quality certification indicating the project will not contravene established water quality standards. These standards are set by the



states and the certification is provided to USACE by the state water quality agency, all with oversight from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

#### **National Historic Preservation Act.**

Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (NHPA) requires federal agencies to take into account the effects of their undertakings on historic properties. Consultations with the State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO) are usually initiated through the interagency coordination process and assist in determining a project's impact on properties included in or meeting the criteria for the National Register of Historic Places. The historic preservation review process mandated by Section 106 is outlined in regulations issued by the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (ACHP). Where tidal hydrology restoration projects take place in areas of human settlement, there exists the possibility of impacts upon historic properties or artifacts.

**National Environmental Policy Act.** The National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) requires agencies to consider environmental impacts of proposed federal actions, including the issuance of permits. The analysis must include reasonable alternatives to the action. NEPA review may require the preparation of an environmental assessment (EA) to determine whether an environmental impact statement (EIS) is required. Federal agencies require EISs for actions that may have a significant impact on the environment. An EIS documents existing conditions, proposed actions and alternatives, and the impacts that may result from implementation of alternatives, including those on natural, cultural, and historic resources. EISs must go through formal, detailed public review and comment. Generally, USACE will administer NEPA analysis for a tidal hydrology restoration project. In most cases, USACE's normal coordination of the permit will satisfy NEPA's requirements so an EIS will not be necessary.



*An example checklist used to guide the analysis of environmental impacts under NEPA is available in the **Toolkit** (page 190).*

## **The Role of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers**

Any individual, firm, or agency engaged in an activity (including restoration) that involves jurisdictional navigable U.S. waters or wetlands must obtain a permit from USACE and/or the appropriate state regulatory agency. USACE supplies general permits for "minor" activities, but typically an individual, project-specific permit is required for barrier removal as part of a tidal hydrologic restoration project. The process for a general permit may take three to four months, while individual permits may require up to 12 months for completion.

### **What is Nationwide Permit 27?**

Certain restoration actions may qualify for USACE's Nationwide Permits (NWP). These "umbrella" permits streamline review and are defined for regionally specific actions. Using an NWP allows applicants to forgo many elements of a detailed analysis typically required for individual permits. An additional benefit is the abbreviated time required for USACE project review.

NWP 27, which serves as a CWA and RHA permit, covers activities resulting in "net increases in aquatic resource function and services"; however, multiple conditions must be met to apply. Pre-construction coordination with USACE is required, as differences may exist depending on regional conditions.

Activities authorized by NWP 27 include but are not limited to:

- Removal of accumulated sediments;
- Installation, removal, and maintenance of small water control structures, dikes, and berms;
- Removal of existing drainage structures;
- Installation of current deflectors;
- Enhancement, restoration, or establishment of riffle and pool stream structure;
- Placement of in-stream habitat structures; modifications of streambed/banks to restore/establish stream meanders;
- Backfilling of artificial channels and drainage ditches;
- Construction of small nesting islands;
- Construction of open water areas;
- Construction of oyster habitat over unvegetated bottom in tidal waters;
- Shellfish seeding; and
- Activities needed to reestablish vegetation, including plowing or disking for seed bed preparation and planting of appropriate species; mechanized land clearing to remove non-native invasive, exotic, or nuisance vegetation; and other related activities. Only native plant species should be planted at the site.



## Permitting and Regulatory Compliance

### Building Successful Relationships with Permitting Agencies

Developing positive working relationships with permitting agency staff eases the overall permitting process, reduces miscommunication, and can increase efficiencies. Establishing a local contact within appropriate regulatory agencies can also help the team determine the appropriate permits required and the recommended process for completing permit applications. Additionally, many regional offices have applications and example permits available online.



*Local contact information for USACE offices and state permitting agencies in the Southeast U.S. can be found in the **Toolkit** (page 195-197).*

Coordinate early with USACE staff, as the process for securing permits varies by jurisdiction and project type. USACE and state regulatory staff are often divided between geographic areas or application type, so multiple agencies may be involved in project review. Due to the complexities of interacting with multiple regulatory agencies, time and experience are needed to master this stage of restoration planning.

Below are some tips to ease the permitting process once the team has contacted the local permitting agency and USACE office:

- Provide background information, including a detailed project description and site location prior to any formal meetings;
- Plan site visits and face-to-face meetings far in advance;
- Prepare visual aids such as PowerPoint presentations or digital maps to help communicate project details;
- Be prepared to discuss the types of permits needed through each agency, and whether supplemental information is required; and
- Provide electronic files whenever possible to ease transferability and review.

### Joint Agency Meetings

Participating in a Joint Agency Meeting is recommended as an option to streamline communication between a project proponent and the many permitting agencies. These meetings allow the details of a project to be vetted by regulators in an informal setting before project plans are submitted for permits. Meetings are often held monthly and are arranged by USACE or relevant state agencies.

Aside from establishing clear lines of communication with regulatory agencies, the project team can further expedite the regulatory process by keeping permitting issues in mind throughout all stages of the restoration project planning process. A project team that anticipates opportunities and challenges with permitting early in the development of the project is likely to save time and resources. Here are some variables to consider early in project development to expedite the permitting process:

- Align restoration projects within larger regional efforts, such as a larger watershed management plan that has been developed in conjunction with the USACE.
- Determine if easements, liens, covenants, water-rights issues, cultural resources, or other parcel aspects may restrict site availability.
- Solicit public input and support early in the project design process.
- Participate in joint inter-agency meetings that involve permitting processes and collective reviews of local or regional permit requests.

*Table 5a* (opposite) summarizes the various permitting requirements of various tidal hydrology restoration projects in the Southeast U.S.



**Table 5a. Example project permitting summary**

Example Project	Federal Permitting	State Permitting	ESA/ NEPA issues	Notes
<b>Bahia Grande</b> <i>Texas</i>	USACE NWP 27	Environmental Assessment (EA) required due to archaeological issues	None	A contractor was hired to draft the EA to expedite the process. See the Bahia Grande Project Portfolio on page 92.
<b>Hopedale</b> <i>Louisiana</i>	USACE CWA Section 404	Coastal Use and Water Quality permits	None	See the Hopedale Project Portfolio on page 98.
<b>Fort DeSoto</b> <i>Florida</i>	USACE NWP 27	FL's Environmental Resource Permit (ERP) process coordinates state and USACE permits; SWFWMD permit	Manatee habitat	Permit to include "stop-work" order with manatee sightings. See the Fort DeSoto Project Portfolio on page 110.
<b>Don Pedro</b> <i>Florida</i>	USACE NWP 27	Southwest Florida Watershed Management District (SWFWMD) required significant technical and engineering data	None	The SWFWMD permit was submitted with letter requesting Nationwide Permit 27 approval; permit was issued within days See the Don Pedro Project Portfolio on page 122.
<b>Clam Bayou</b> <i>Florida</i>	USACE NWP 27	FL's Standard General Permit	Manatee habitat	Designed permits to provide movement for manatees See the Clam Bayou Project Portfolio on page 128.
<b>Wildcat Cove</b> <i>Florida</i>	USACE NWP 27	FL's Standard General Permit	None	The permitting process only took 90 days due to team's familiarity with permitting staff (compared to a typical six-month processing time) See the Wildcat Cove Project Portfolio on page 140.
<b>Sandpiper Pond</b> <i>South Carolina</i>	USACE CWA Section 404	SC's Department of Health and Environmental Control coordinated state permits	Project area once contained threatened species (seabeach amaranth)	Permit stipulates that no work is to occur during sea turtle nesting season. See the Sandpiper Pond Project Portfolio on page 146.
<b>North River Farms</b> <i>North Carolina</i>	USACE CWA Section 404	Coastal Area Management Act permit (through NC's Department of Environment and Natural Resources – DENR)	None	An Erosion Control Plan was required through the DENR's Land Quality division See the North River Farms Project Portfolio on page 152.



## Chapter 6: Construction and Maintenance

The project construction phase involves construction preparations, actual construction, and post-construction management. During the construction phase, the project team will carry out the design, while referring back to project goals and objectives. Consulting the project goals and objectives is important for keeping construction on track.

This chapter focuses on:

- Pre-construction considerations, including selecting a construction contractor, budgeting and cost analyses, scheduling, and final plans;
- Construction implementation, including site preparation, removal or installation, and contingency planning;
- Post-construction management, including “as built” monitoring and maintenance; and
- Construction and maintenance highlight project: Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project, Murrels Inlet, South Carolina.

Additional construction and maintenance resources and summary recommendations can be found in the *Toolkit* (page 198).

### Pre-Construction Preparation

During the **pre-construction stage**, a project team will develop a budget and estimate costs for construction, develop a statement of work, select a construction contractor, determine a schedule, and finalize construction plans (Diefenderfer and Thom 2003). Some of these efforts may overlap with design and permitting phases. For instance, developing an initial cost estimate during the design and permitting phase allows the team to plan and provide budgets to potential funding agencies. However, once the project has reached the construction phase, the contractor may recommend modifications to the design, which may require adjustments to the permit and the project budget.



A brief outline of the overall construction process can be found in the **Toolkit** (page 199).

### Estimating construction costs.

Costs and methods of tidal hydrology restoration projects vary widely within and between ecosystems and regional economies. Costs result from factors including project location, size, time of year or day (because of tidal regimes), site accessibility, equipment and material needs, site contaminants, earth moving, erosion control, and the amount and type of vegetation to be planted. Current market conditions will directly impact all costs. Though there are no standard construction costs for restoration, the following recommendations may be useful when developing a budget:

- *Work closely with contractors to estimate costs.* Discussions with local contractors and experienced engineers may help provide rough cost estimates expected for that area.
- *Research similar projects.* It may be helpful to start pricing based on estimates derived from other similar projects, especially if they are in the same region.
- *Leverage resources.* Pooling resources and partnering may be the most cost-effective approach to any project. In-kind contributions can help defray costs and is also viewed favorably in federal grant applications. However, having more partners also elevates the need for effective coordination and communication.

CONSIDER

### Budgeting for Contingencies

Restoration practitioners along the Gulf Coast have had first-hand experience with cost increases due to weather. Hurricane seasons and resulting demand on construction resources have more than doubled some material costs. Some smaller restoration projects have had difficulty attracting competitive construction bids, given the high demand for contracting services on much larger, expensive post-storm projects. Although changes in market conditions are generally unforeseeable, budgeting for contingency may help cover unplanned cost increases.



*Replacement of a portion of the causeway with a 40-foot span bridge at Fort DeSoto Park in Tampa Bay, FL, involved a range of heavy equipment including cranes, a long-arm excavator and dredge pumps.*

*Photo Credit: NOAi*

- *Be aware that estimated costs may differ from actual construction costs because of uncertainties about site condition and implementation.*
- *Identify construction needs and incorporate realistic expectations into the budget.* If specific expertise or technologies are deemed necessary for the project, then budget for them.
- *Budget for construction and monitoring contingencies, or unforeseeable cost requirements.* This typically ranges between 15 and 25 percent of total construction costs.

#### **Developing an independent cost estimate.**

There are two reasons to develop an independent cost estimate, or line item budget. First, it will assist the project team in considering costs associated with all potential aspects of the contract, which in turn, ensures that an appropriate budget has been allocated. Second, it may prove useful during contract negotiation.

Project costs can be categorized in various ways. For instance, teams can organize their budget by specific restoration tasks, restoration phase (e.g., design, construction, monitoring), construction stage (e.g., site preparation, planting,



## Construction and Maintenance

**Table 6a. Potential budget line items for construction phases.**

Pre-Construction	Active Construction	Post-Construction
Baseline data collection	Mobilization	As-built assessment/survey
Site surveys	Materials (i.e., culvert, plants)	Physical and biological data collection
Phase I or II Environmental Assessment (survey for potential contaminants)	Labor (heavy equipment operators, manual labor, etc.)	Maintenance
Employee briefing/training	Construction activity (i.e., clearing and grubbing, excavation, planting)	Removal of temporary structures
Project management and oversight	Sediment and erosion control	Grant administration/report generation
Meeting space for team and public meetings	Road demolition and repair/traffic management	Permit-required report generation
Communications/public relations staff time	Project management and oversight	Adaptive management (if possible to budget)
Volunteer coordination/education/outreach activities	Independent oversight and inspection	Project management and oversight
Plant Propagation (if preferable to existing nursery stocks)	Contingency costs (i.e., budget overruns, unanticipated circumstances)	Communications/public relations staff time
Development of work/implementation plans	Non-traditional labor ("paid" volunteers)	Volunteer coordination/education/outreach



installation/removal), or input (e.g., labor, equipment, materials). Construction budgets are most often itemized by:

- *Labor and equipment* – where the cost of labor is separated from the cost of the equipment for any given activity; or
- *Construction activity* – where the cost of the labor and equipment is included in an overall cost of the activity (e.g., excavation).

**Table 6a** (above) includes potential budget line items common for tidal hydrology restoration construction. Project teams should consider which of these budget items are critical and realistic to incorporate. Some may be included in a Statement of Work (see **Writing a Statement of Work**) for any individual phase of the project for which a

contractor will be hired. Project partners may also commit to certain budget items, if they have the expertise on staff to complete them.



*Example financial documents, independent cost estimates, and a match analysis tool can be found in the **Toolkit** (page 200-203).*

**Writing a statement of work.** The statement, or scope, of work (SOW), developed by the project team, is a narrative description of the deliverables and services required to meet the contract requirements. It provides the basis on which contractors develop proposals and bids. A SOW will be drafted for any project phase for which a contractor is required to complete a task. For instance, a SOW may be required for the design phase, the scientific



monitoring phase, etc. The process described here focuses on development of a SOW for construction, but much of the process is applicable to the development of any SOW.

Construction contractors need a clear SOW in order to detail the work plan and expectations for project success. Specifically, the SOW should establish a chain of command, especially if multiple partners are involved, and require a communications plan (i.e., establishment of a main point of contact for both the contractor and the project team and a time line when communication is anticipated.). If there are any special grant, NEPA, or permit conditions to the project, they need to be specified in the SOW. Safety is also a critical consideration for construction, so the SOW should require a written safety plan for all construction related activities, including management of volunteers (if applicable). Below are some additional tips to keep in mind when writing a construction SOW.

- *Describe the project background, goals and objectives.*
- *Provide a template of the project design.* This can save time and reduce costs.
- *Include as many project requirements as possible* in the SOW to help avoid change orders on contracts.
- *Incorporate a construction activity schedule that shows required timing* (e.g., on-site construction must occur between November and March to avoid bird nesting season) and request that bid proposals incorporate a detailed schedule of all activities. More detail is provided below in the *Scheduling* subsection (page 46).
- *Request consultations with all parties involved* at each stage of the construction process to reduce confusion, redundancy, and unnecessary costs.
- *Require all parties to visit the site before bids are submitted*, if possible. In instances where pre-bid site visits are not possible, require on-site meetings during cost negotiations.

- *Request all projected expenses to be explicitly identified by the contractor.* Consider whether to request line item cost estimates (such as those in **Table 6a**) versus lump sum bids, and consider per hour or a lump sum for labor costs.
- *Be explicit about the tasks to be delivered by project partners* so the contractor does not budget for those tasks.
- *Reference example projects* comparable in size and scope to your project.
- *Do not be too rigid in your requirements.* Ask for and be willing to consider alternative potential techniques, design modifications, and construction methods posed by the contractor. Their previous experience could save time and money.
- *Request information on the contractor's prior experience with similar projects.*
- *Ask for qualifications of and references for key staff* to be assigned to the project and prior notification of any changes made to key staff.

**Selecting a contractor.** Once proposals and bids are received in response to the SOW, the team will evaluate responses to choose the most appropriate contractor. The goal is to hire a knowledgeable and experienced contractor who can provide expertise and resources not found in the initial project team. Before selecting a contractor, be sure they are bonded and fully insured. Typically, state contractor licensing boards will know if issues have been reported for a contractor. Other tips to keep in mind when selecting construction contractors include:

- *Consider hiring companies that have experienced teams* of biologists, engineers, and construction personnel.
- *Hold pre-construction meetings on-site with potential contractors if possible;* viewing the site allows contractors to prepare better bids and may reduce later bid addendums. Site visits are especially prudent for non-local contractors.

*(continued on page 46)*



## Construction and Maintenance



- *Use local contractors for small-scale projects* because they will be more knowledgeable of site conditions and appropriate construction techniques for the area. However, this may narrow the pool of qualified contractors.
- *Closely evaluate any alternatives and techniques* that have been proposed by contractors: they may have some innovative and cost-effective ideas.
- *Be cautious if considering using marine contractors who specialize in building docks and bulkheads.* Their experience working in coastal areas may not be relevant to the construction of restoration projects.

Keep in mind that there may be alternatives to hiring a contractor for all phases of project construction, especially when specialized skills are not necessarily required for the project at hand. For example, consider using non-traditional labor resources such as local prison-work programs, youth corps organizations, or local volunteer service clubs. These alternatives can also help keep construction costs down.

### Finding Experts

The Society of Wetland Scientists (SWS) can help project teams locate trained wetland science professionals. SWS has created a certification program “aimed at serving the public’s need to identify qualified individuals to assess and manage the Nation’s wetland resources.” An online database is available to search for certified individuals in your city or state. The SWS Professional Certification Program also offers a Vendor Listing to help you locate “sources of state-of-the-science technology and information pertinent to wetland science.”



For more information, visit <http://www.wetlandcert.org>

**Negotiating with contractors.** Once a preferred contractor has been identified, the team will enter into formal negotiations to finalize elements of the proposal and bid.

The independent estimate generated during budgeting may be a tool used to assist with negotiating cost, manpower, and expertise required for specific project elements. Two example negotiating points follow.

- The contractor may have budgeted to lease a staging site that could be provided by the project team.
- The project team anticipated (and budgeted for) one senior and one junior engineer to be on site during construction, but the bid from the contractor proposes two senior engineers (at a higher rate).

In both instances the team can negotiate anticipated requirements, roles of contract staff, and related costs. The contract is finalized when all services, deliverables, and an associated schedule are agreed upon through the negotiation process.

**Scheduling.** The SOW will include a rough schedule for implementation; however, this schedule will be revised through negotiations and discussions with the construction contractor and will ultimately be determined by some factors outside the project team’s

**Table 6b.**  
**Construction scheduling considerations.**

Construction Factor	Timing/Scheduling Consideration
<b>Biological</b>	Seed germination, invasive species removal, species migration or nesting seasons
<b>Physical</b>	Tidal regime, water flow and velocity, erosion, weather conditions
<b>Funding</b>	Grant cycles
<b>Legal</b>	Permitting, land acquisition, conservation easement
<b>Climate</b>	Hurricane season, wet/dry seasons
<b>Local circumstances</b>	Traffic volumes, tourist seasons, local events, equipment and labor availability



CONSIDER

## Construction Challenges in Estuaries

Tidal hydrology restoration in estuarine or brackish environments presents several challenges to the construction stage. First, activities may need to be timed around tide levels. In many instances, construction can only take place during low tide to allow full access to the site, yet as-built monitoring may need to occur at high tide to determine if maximum flow is being achieved. Second, saltwater and sediment conditions of estuaries will play a big factor in the type of equipment which can be used at the site and for how long. For example, heavy metal machinery may sink in soft-ground conditions or rust if continually exposed to the saltwater. Although the contractor should ultimately be responsible for any damage to the site, make sure that potential contractors are knowledgeable of estuarine ecosystem characteristics and specialized equipment.



*Low ground pressure equipment, characterized by wider treads to spread the weight of the machinery, is sometimes desired to reduce soil compaction. In other cases, soft tires may be preferred.*

Photo Credit: NOAA

control. Such factors include the availability of funding (e.g., grant award expiration), time needed to procure required permits, and the specifications of those permits. Compliance with the Endangered Species Act (ESA), National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), Magnuson-Stevens Act (MSA), and other permitting regulations can dictate the timing of construction. For example, regulations may prohibit in-water construction during certain seasons due to threatened species presence.



*For more information on scheduling and permits, see **Chapter 5: Permitting***

Societal interests can also impact scheduling. For instance, culvert construction at Clam Bayou was completed during off-peak tourist season to minimize traffic congestion since construction impacted traffic flow to Sanibel Island, Florida.

Scheduling for biological, physical, and engineering considerations are important to take into account when constructing tidal hydrology restoration projects. **Table 6b** (opposite) describes some of these factors.

**Developing construction plans.** After entering into the contract, there are typically implementation details that need to be finalized before construction can begin. Most contractors will develop **construction plans**, or field protocols, that incorporate written guidelines for field crews to follow. At a minimum, field protocols should include (IWWR 2003):

- Descriptions of site preparation needed;
- Specifications/diagrams for construction features;

*(continued on page 48)*



## Construction and Maintenance



- Descriptions of how to install features, such as culverts or plants;
- Specifications of equipment to be used;
- Inventories and locations of all plant species, if applicable;
- A safety plan and a communications plan;
- Plans to prevent construction impacts on other resources, such as a Sediment and Erosion Control Plan and a Tree Protection Plan;
- Indemnification language, in case there are accidents or damage to property;
- Plans for site maintenance during construction;
- A construction schedule with terms for terminating the construction; and
- Plans for monitoring key environmental features while construction is underway, such as tidal flow and velocity, water depth, and groundwater swells to determine if any adjustments in construction need to be made.

Construction plans, or field protocols, can be complicated, as they typically require input from hydrologists, engineers, ecologists, and community leaders. As these plans are developed, work closely with the contractor to make sure the plan is as specific and intelligible as possible to avoid confusion. Review the engineering drawings and specifications with the contractors; by doing so the team can visualize the project and understand project specifications relating to water flow/velocity, elevation, slope,

erosion protection, substrata composition, and schedule. Have hydrologists and ecologists review construction plans to make sure the structures and related functions are consistent with scientific goals and objectives of the project.

## Construction Implementation

**Construction** is the action of restoring the site, whether the aim is habitat restoration, habitat enhancement, or outright creation of new habitat. The construction phase often receives public attention because the activities are visible and community members may serve as volunteers. Construction activities for tidal hydrology restoration usually include physical alterations, such as dike, dam, or levee removal; grading; culvert installation, cleanout, or removal; channel cleaning; erosion control; and vegetation planting (see **Table 6c**, page 50). Construction activities can disturb and even harm the ecosystem and should be limited in duration and scale as much as possible. Try to reduce the footprint of activities by controlling the number of people and pieces of equipment on site and by having the appropriate environmental protection plans in place.

**Implementation stages.** There are several stages involved with construction implementation (IWWR 2003):

- *Plant preparation.* This stage typically begins during the Pre-Construction Phase and carries through to the Construction Phase. It may involve identifying native seed banks, collecting seeds, and propagating plants. If purchasing plants from a nursery, (*continued on page 51*)

CONSIDER

### Reducing the Negative Impacts of Construction

At the Don Pedro Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Florida, the Florida Department of Environmental Protection has been careful to control the footprint of activity by stipulating the types of equipment that may be used on site, specifically in regard to tire type. They recommend using soft track and soft tires. Otherwise “the damage done is often not worth the benefit of the project.” – *Annette Nielson, FDEP.*



*Implementation of the Tarpon Bay Tidal Hydrology Project required careful coordination with local utilities regarding pipes and other right-of-way issues.*

*Photo Credit: Florida Department of Environmental Protection*



## Construction and Maintenance



**Table 6c. Design strategy considerations related to budget.**

Design Strategy	Relative Cost	Equipment Needed	Considerations
Culvert placement (pipe or arch)	Low to Moderate	Corrugated metal or pre-fab concrete pipes, gravel, rip-rap, excavator	Causeways, berms, and other barriers often contain electrical, gas, and sewer lines. Coordinate with utility companies prior to construction.
Culvert placement (box)	Moderate	Excavator or crane for placement of pre-fab culvert or molds for pouring on-site; gravel, rip-rap	See above consideration. Also, for culverts under roadways, timing of construction must be carefully coordinated to minimize road closures.
Culvert replacement or repair	Low to Moderate	Culvert cleaning tools, "sleeve" inserts, mesh benders, mesh flatteners, gravel, rip-rap	See above culvert considerations. Velocity of flow and scour are both ecological and safety considerations; construct during low flows and use armoring materials to protect culvert.
Bridge installation	Very High	Cranes and hoists, concrete pouring stations, piles, pile driver	For smaller spans, consider the use of pre-fab modular bridges that reduce costs by eliminating the need for concrete form work or pours.
Barrier breach (berms, dikes, levees, dams)	Low	Backhoe/excavator, bulldozer, dump truck, rip-rap	If possible, distribute soil to on-site locations to reduce costs.
Barrier removal (berms, dikes, levees, dams)	High	Backhoe, excavator/ cranes, dump truck	Erosion control is imperative; loosening large amounts of soil/sediment can make sediment flow into gutters, storm drains, and the ocean. Cost may be controlled if soil can be redistributed on site.
Ditch filling or plugging	Low	Bulldozer, backhoe	Plug ditches at their lowest point at an elevation 20% to 33% above grade to allow for soil settling (Reis, personal communication, 2009). Utilize original spoils if available.
Tidal creek creation	High	Trailers, bulldozer, backhoe and gardening machines, dump truck	Excavation levels must be precise and monitored as-built. Use of amphibious or low ground pressure tracked vehicles may be necessary for working in sites with existing wetland conditions.
Mosaic habitat creation	Moderate	Backhoe/excavator, bulldozer	May increase design costs or on-site costs due to extra time and care needed to implement precise elevations. This technique is most applicable at large sites or areas prone to sea level rise.
Sediment grading and/or elevation alterations	Moderate to High	Backhoe/excavator, bulldozer, dump truck, silt fences, straw bales, compost berms or filter socks, and sediment control basins	When raising elevations over a large area in proximity to dredging operations, consider use of dredge spoils. When lowering elevations (scraping), coordinate with construction sites in need of fill to reduce transportation and disposal costs.
Water control structures (i.e., tide gates and weirs)	Moderate	Gates, molds for concrete wingwalls, culverts, rip rap	Consider structures with fish slots or variable-crested weirs to optimize fish passage and water management options. Use low-maintenance structures able to withstand extreme hydrological and climactic events, such as hurricanes.
Broad-crested earthen weir	Low	Excavator, bulldozer, geoweb materials	Weir heights must be precise to be effective.



the origin of the stock should be considered. Always use native species and cuttings or seeds from local plants. Locally adapted seeds and plants will have a better chance of surviving the conditions at your site than plants or seeds of the same species that come from another area (Stedman 2003).

Acclimation to local salinity gradients prior to planting can also increase success. Although re-establishing vegetation is a common practice, not all tidal hydrology restoration projects will necessitate it. Consider negotiating a warranty with your plant supplier that will ensure a minimum survival period for transplants. The IWWR 2003 report, cited in the References, includes more information on this activity.

- *Site preparation.* This stage may involve installing temporary tide controls; removing and/or bringing in dirt; plugging or removing drains; breaching levees; staging heavy equipment; preparing and/or installing erosion control devices; clearing access to the site (e.g., brush removal); and removing invasive species.
- *Construction (removal or installation).* This stage involves constructing essential project components such as water control and stabilization structures, soil gradations, and habitat structures. Different design strategies require different equipment, costs, and environmental and logistical considerations. Based on the restoration design strategies presented in Chapter 4: Project Design, **Table 6c** (opposite) offers construction considerations for each strategy.

**Vegetation considerations.** If vegetation planting follows earth-moving operations, here are some tips to keep in mind:

- Sand is a good substrate to use for building a marsh platform because it is easier to manipulate during construction, to plant healthy vegetation, and to fertilize (sand will need fertilizing since it lacks nutrients and organic matter). With correct plant spacing, using sand will generally result in a two-year grow-out to vegetate the site completely.

- Consider preserving or stockpiling topsoil on site as it may contain a valuable seed source that can be distributed near project completion.
- Restoration experts generally agree that bare root vegetation is most cost-effective in intertidal areas, while three-gallon pots (or larger) are typically recommended in upland areas.
- Most practitioners agree that at least three to five years of maintenance is required to combat non-native vegetation on a site, so plan accordingly.

**Ensuring quality implementation.** There are numerous actions a project team can take to ensure the quality of construction. Restoration experts offer the following advice:

- *Ensure quality construction through independent oversight, and budget appropriately for this expense.* Hold weekly construction oversight meetings that include input from the construction manager and project team. Create agendas for meetings, conduct site visits, and take notes to keep a careful record. For example, the Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Louisiana budgeted approximately 10 percent of total costs for on-site, independent oversight and inspection.
- *Consider keeping the permit process separate from the construction contracting process, but maintain communication about permit specifications.* This approach provides the project team with more control over final design, scheduling, and costs. However, it will require clear communication with the contractor to ensure construction elements comply with permitting requirements.
- *Do not implement changes to the construction plan without thorough evaluation by the planning and design team.*



## Construction and Maintenance

**When Implementation does not go as planned.** Restoration experts know that construction does not always go as planned and offer the following advice:



- **Have a *contingency plan* and funds to implement it.** Know when to cut your losses, and modify the contingency plan if necessary during the project.
- **Engage design experts** throughout the entire project so you can adapt quickly to changes.
- **Communicate with persistence**, even when the team, contractors, or stakeholders are reticent. Help the team translate their expertise to others. For example, biologists need to understand how construction equipment works, and engineers need to understand the ecology of the site to participate effectively on a project team.

### Budgeting for Construction Monitoring and Maintenance

It is a good idea to budget for construction monitoring and maintenance to ensure the funds are available for these activities. Some funding sources even require it. For example, projects completed under the federal Coastal Wetland Planning, Protection, and Restoration Act (CWPPRA) must budget for these costs at project outset. For instance, the project team for the Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Louisiana set aside a budget of \$500,000 prior to construction of this large-scale project for all construction monitoring and maintenance over a 20-year period.

CONSIDER



For more information, see the **Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 98).

### Post-Construction Management

Post-construction management of tidal hydrology restoration projects includes maintenance and monitoring of the physical construction (IWWR 2003). It is critical to the project's value over time, especially for projects that involve engineered structures. Because of its importance, post-construction management should be planned and budgeted from the outset of the project, along with funds for corrective action.

**Construction monitoring.** The project manager should monitor the site during and after construction to ensure work is progressing and completed as planned. An example of monitoring during construction might be measuring and adjusting invert elevations of culverts to achieve maximum flow.

An **as-built survey** should be completed immediately following construction, ideally before the contractor removes their equipment and leaves the site. The as-built survey records

### Cutting Your Losses

The Tarpon Bay Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Florida encountered many challenges during construction that resulted in unplanned daily oversight of the construction contractor by the project team. In addition to safety and site maintenance issues, the contractor attempted to use equipment that was insufficient to complete construction. The project lost time and resources before the team decided to cut their losses and select a new contractor who successfully completed the project.



For more information, see the **Tarpon Bay Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 134).



*Construction underway to breach the dikes at the Eden Landing Salt Pond Restoration Project on the eastern shore of San Francisco Bay, CA.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*

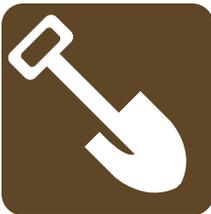
post-construction physical structure, elevation, soil type, and other relevant parameters. The survey should be closely compared to the design (goal and objectives) and construction specifications. In fact, many project managers suggest having an independent contractor complete the post-construction evaluation to ensure compliance with design.

Be realistic about the project team's expectations for construction, but if there are major problems with the final construction results, request that the contractor make specific corrections if it is within the contract or if it is otherwise cost-effective to amend the contract. Use the as-built assessment as a baseline for monitoring and evaluation needs.



*For more details on baselines, see*  
**Chapter 7: Scientific  
Evaluation and Monitoring**

**Construction maintenance.** Maintenance of a tidal hydrology restoration site involves structure repair; plant replacement (if planting was part of the original project); and control or elimination of invasive species, herbivores, and predators. Local entities will likely be the most accessible and cost effective for administering long-term maintenance of the project site; however, local priorities may shift in the future and diminish their ability to follow through with construction maintenance. Consider contracting for long-term maintenance if the project budget allows.



## Construction and Maintenance



**Top left:** Increased sedimentation due to coastal modifications led to the loss of an inlet through coastal dunes that provided tidal flow to Sandpiper Pond in Murrells Inlet, SC. **Top right:** Tidal flow moves through the restored inlet at high tide. **Bottom:** The restored tidal inlet at low tide. Annual maintenance is required to sustain tidal flow through the dune system.

*Photo Credit: SC State Parks*



## Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

### Huntington Beach State Park, Georgetown County, SC

Sandpiper Pond at Huntington Beach State Park is a thriving coastal wetland system. System health relies on tidal flushing and circulation from a short inlet that meanders through coastal dunes and connects to the Atlantic Ocean. In 1989, the inlet was blocked due to years of increased sedimentation along the coast caused by the construction of a nearby jetty and a powerful storm surge associated with Hurricane Hugo. The lack of tidal circulation resulted in lower salinity levels, an influx of invasive plants, and a series of major fish kills.

In an effort to restore the health of the pond, the Friends of Huntington Beach State Park (a nonprofit group) along with Park officials sought to breach the newly formed dunes and reintroduce tidal flushing to the system. In order to mimic original conditions and maintain a natural appearance to the dune system, detailed engineering plans with specific elevations were created that called for the movement of sand only. Unlike many tidal hydrology projects, no hard structures, culverts, or armoring were used to convey tidal waters. Although this construction technique was simple and low impact, it required planning for intensive on-going maintenance.

Prior to construction, volunteers removed dune vegetation from the project area and transplanted it nearby. Shortly after, Park employees used two rented bulldozers over a one-week period to create a 40-foot-wide swath through the sand to allow ocean tides to reach the Pond. Volunteers with engineering expertise closely monitored elevations, and the final stages of earthwork were timed to coincide with low tides. Now after several years of tidal flows into Sandpiper Pond, salinity levels have increased and native estuarine species such as *Spartina*, sheepshead, and blue crab have returned.

With the constant accretion of sand and the shifting dynamics of the dune system, the inlet to Sandpiper Pond requires consistent maintenance that was anticipated and incorporated into long-term Park management plans. Park staff must rent bulldozers annually and allot time for clearing the inlet. As stipulated in the project permit, this work must be completed in April before turtle nesting season.

Through the many years of experience acquired by the inlet maintenance staff, construction maintenance techniques continue to become more effective and efficient. Originally, the created inlet was a straight channel built at a right angle to the pond. Over time, the channel has meandered, forming an indirect route to the pond. During annual maintenance, construction crews work with this naturally defined course. Crews have also learned that sands excavated from the channel must be graded at an angle less than was previously thought.

Perhaps as a benefit from the constant attention required to maintain Sandpiper Pond, a high degree of familiarity with the site dynamics now exists among the project team. After the initial breach, the project team recognized an opportunity to further enhance the tidal flushing and circulation of the Pond. A culvert was installed under a nearby road to create another access point for flow in the Pond.



For more photos, details, and example project documents, see the [Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio](#) (page 146).



# Chapter 7: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring



**Scientific monitoring** is the systematic collection of data that provides information on changes in environmental conditions of the project area. The data collected will indicate problems and/or progress toward achieving restoration project goals and objectives (IWWR 2003). Monitoring requires measuring certain habitat attributes or physical parameters at regular intervals before and after project implementation. This record of habitat changes, along with comparison to a reference condition, will indicate if objectives are being met.

Monitoring and project evaluation are important components of systematic project management.

A monitoring plan should be developed in concert with project goals and objectives and strive to evaluate the effectiveness of achieving those goals and objectives.



For more information, see **Chapter 3: Goals and Objectives.**

This chapter will provide:

- General introduction to the issues of monitoring and scientific evaluation;
- Discussion of what and how to monitor;
- Discussion of where and when to monitor;
- Guidelines for how to determine tidal hydrology restoration effectiveness;
- Possibilities for how a practitioner can contribute to furthering the science and understanding of tidal hydrology restoration; and
- Scientific evaluation and monitoring highlight project: Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project, Pinellas County, Florida.

Additional scientific evaluation and monitoring resources and summary recommendations can be found in the **Toolkit** (page 204).

## Background and Reasons for Monitoring

Reasons for implementing scientific monitoring plans have been detailed in numerous publications (Kentula et al. 1992; Thom 2000; Wilber et al. 2000; Diefenderfer 2003; Thayer et al. 2003; Thayer et al. 2005; Thom et al. 2005) and include:

- **Evaluation of project effectiveness.** It is important that specific parameters are measured to evaluate progress toward meeting project goals and objectives. Often public support and agency funding depend on the demonstration of achieving project goals and objectives.
- **Maintenance.** Monitoring indicates needs for maintenance, including invasive species removal, turbidity curtain positioning, floating debris removal, signage, fence maintenance, and repair of engineered structures (e.g., culvert flap-gates).
- **Adaptive management.** Project monitoring allows the practitioner to observe the project area evolution carefully and to employ adaptive management practices when needed (Walters 1986; Steyer and Llewellyn 2000; Thom 2000; Thom 2005). Typical mid-course corrections for tidal hydrology restoration projects might include tidal creek channel modification, vegetation re-seeding or planting, grading, ditch plugging, or even planning for the future construction of additional tidal exchanges.



Additional goals and objectives references are available in the **Toolkit** (page 176).

- **Enhancement of science and management understanding.** Data are needed to improve our understanding of the effects of tidal restrictions and of tidal hydrology restoration. The synthesis of information from restoration sites can aid future restoration efforts (Neckles et al. 2002). Practitioners learn from both the successes and failures of past projects.



*A flow meter is used to monitor the effectiveness of the culvert installation at St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in the Florida Panhandle.*

*Photo Credit: USFWS*

## Major Components of a Monitoring Plan



*For an overview of the most common components included in a monitoring plan, see the monitoring plan template in the **Toolkit** (page 205).*

The monitoring plan should be developed concurrently with the design and construction plans and should flow directly from the goals and objectives of the project, including both structural and functional objectives. For each objective, a corresponding measurable **parameter** will be selected. Each parameter will have an associated **baseline** (condition of the site prior to restoration activities), **reference** (condition of a representative site with characteristics desired to be achieved at the restoration site), and **target** (realistic target to be achieved during a specified period of time). Establishment of appropriate parameters and targets allows for implementation of a

monitoring plan that will indicate whether the project goals and objectives have been achieved.

Execution of the monitoring plan entails data collection related to each of the selected parameters. (Example Monitoring Data Collection Forms and an example Wildlife Monitoring Datasheet are available in the **Toolkit** on pages 206-210.) The methods and timing of data collection will be influenced by numerous factors, including project goals, targets, geographic location, and site-specific conditions. The frequency of data collection and number of samples required is determined by development of a robust statistical and experimental design. With the exception of goals and objectives (see **Chapter 3: Goals and Objectives**) and experimental design and analysis (beyond the scope of this manual), each of these monitoring plan components, as they relate to tidal hydrology, are described more fully in the subsections that follow.



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

### What and How to Monitor

There are numerous scientific monitoring parameters that can be measured to examine the ways a tidal system might change following tidal hydrology restoration actions. The goal of a scientific evaluation plan is to select key measurable parameters and create a sampling strategy for those parameters that will provide the most reliable and useful data to help the restoration team determine the project's effectiveness in reaching project objectives.

Examples of useful parameters include:

- *Fauna* (e.g., community composition, diversity, density, presence/absence, biomass, size/age frequency, secondary production, etc.);
- *Water quality* (e.g., dissolved oxygen, pH, nutrients, temperature, etc.);
- *Tidal flooding patterns* (e.g., extent, tide height, tidal prism, periodicity, water velocity, etc.);
- *Soils* (e.g., redox, pore water salinity and chemistry, organic content, vertical accretion, etc.);
- *Native vegetation* (e.g., community composition, percent cover, stem density, underground/above ground biomass, Carbon/Nitrogen ratios, primary production, etc.); and
- *Invasive vegetation* (e.g., presence/absence, percent cover, number of seedlings, stem density, ratio of native to invasive cover, etc.).

Restoration practitioners generally agree on four core categories of scientific monitoring parameters that are applicable for almost all tidal hydrology restoration projects: **hydrology**, **vegetation**, **soil**, and **nekton** (NOAA 2008). Within each of these four categories are specific parameters, or characteristics, that may be appropriate to monitor for an individual restoration project. **Table 7a** (page 60) includes specific recommended parameters and related monitoring techniques.

### Structural and Functional Objectives

**Structural objectives** are objectives focused on the physical aspects that define the habitat, such as the percent cover of vegetation.

**Functional objectives** are objectives focused on the processes occurring within and between habitats, such as fish utilization or vegetative growth.

NOAA has developed several useful resources to aid restoration practitioners choose appropriate structural and functional objectives and monitoring parameters for their restoration projects:

**Science-Based Restoration Monitoring of Coastal Habitats** (Volumes 1 and 2) provide a framework and set of tools for developing restoration monitoring plans.

**NOAA's Restoration Monitoring Planner** is an interactive online tool to assist in developing a basic monitoring plan for restoration efforts in salt marsh, shellfish, or riverine habitats.

These resources can be accessed online at <http://www.era.noaa.gov/information/monitor.html>.

**Setting target values.** Once specific parameters have been selected, target values should be set that relate back to each project objective. A target value is the desired numerical metric to be achieved within a specified period of time.



For more on relating target values back to goals and objectives, see **Chapter 3: Goals and Objectives.**



For example, a project objective might be to restore percent cover of wetland vegetation to that of a healthy wetland, or to the reference system. The parameter measured is percent cover of wetland vegetation. For instance, the target value may be 80 percent of reference within three years. Keep in mind that data collected from the reference site allow you to set pre-construction targets – but continuing to monitor the reference site after construction allows you to modify targets as conditions change. (See *Relying on Reference Sites* for more information on choosing reference sites.)

Other methods for choosing target values include literature review and collecting information from similar restoration projects completed in the past. Be aware, however, that methods used previously to collect data from earlier restoration sites may not provide appropriate comparison to more current data collection methods. Data collection from nearby reference sites is the preferred approach for setting target values.

In ecological systems, it is not always reasonable to achieve target restoration values (based on pristine conditions) during the monitoring period which is sometimes dictated by funding agency reporting (See *Principle Monitoring Periods*, page 62) (Thom and Wellman 1996; Simenstad and Thom 1996). Instead, it may be more beneficial to chart the project's trajectory (Kentula et al. 1992; Simenstad and Thom 1996) toward targets and perhaps set intermediate targets, also known as success criteria or performance standards. For example,

while the project objective may be to achieve 80 percent cover of marsh vegetation (similar to the reference marsh), it may not be reasonable for the site to reach this high threshold in only one to two years of monitoring before a final report is due to a funding agency. In this case, an intermediate target of 40 percent cover after two years may be more appropriate and satisfy funding agency requirements.

**Relying on reference sites.** Typically, a reference site represents an “ideal” undisturbed habitat and has characteristics similar to the goals and targets of the restoration project. For project evaluation purposes, the restoration site should be compared with the reference site(s) with the goal of increasing similarity over time. Reference sites provide information about the natural range of values for the parameters used in the monitoring program and show the annual variation in these parameters. The monitoring plan should incorporate data collection at the reference site for as long as possible both before (minimum one year) and after project construction (minimum five years) to account for variations in habitat and tidal flow.

Tips for selecting reference sites:

- *Select both up-estuary and down-estuary reference sites for wetland tidal hydrology restoration projects. This will allow for better comparison of more saline down-estuary or more freshwater up-estuary conditions.*

*(continued on page 62)*

CONSIDER

## National Estuarine Research Reserves as Reference Sites

Frequently there are no pristine or nearby reference sites available for comparison and practitioners must seek out suitable surrogates for reference conditions. To this end, consider sites within the National Estuarine Research Reserve (NERR) system. Examination of the data available at NERR sites (or from other reference sites) may help practitioners select the parameters to include in a monitoring plan. Since NERR sites are relatively undisturbed and have on-going monitoring programs (especially focused on water quality), these programs provide data meant to be indicative of pristine conditions. NERR sites can be found in every coastal state (including the Great Lakes) except Louisiana. The Eden Landing Salt Pond Restoration Project in California, part of the South Bay Salt Ponds Project, is utilizing China Camp (a portion of the San Francisco Bay NERR) as a reference site.



For more information on NOAA's network of National Estuarine Research Reserves, visit the NERRS website at <http://www.nerrs.noaa.gov/>

**Table 7a. Core monitoring parameters with recommendations for monitoring specific characteristics.**

	Characteristic	As-Built
Core Parameter: Hydrology	<b>Water depth</b> (Neckles and Dionne 2000)	Above ground: use staff gauge; below ground: use shallow well (slotted PVC pipe)
	<b>Flow pattern</b>	Direct observation to indicate major pathways and channels on map
	<b>Flow rate</b>	Measure inflow or outflow with flumes or weirs; measure interior flow with current meters
	<b>Tidal flooding extent</b>	GPS edge at spring high tide
	<b>Tidal prism</b> (volume)	Combine site survey and water height to calculate prism
Core Parameter: Vegetation (Native and Non-native)	<b>Community composition</b> (Kent and Coker 1992; Neckles and Dionne 2000)	Map planting areas and measure density
	<b>Coverage</b> (Elzinga et al. 1998)	Estimate or measure percent cover
	<b>Survivorship</b> (when native planting part of design)	Number and type of vegetation planted
	<b>Height</b>	Estimated or measured height of plants
	<b>Reproduction</b>	N/A
Core Parameter: Soils	<b>Soil salinity</b> (Neckles and Dionne 2000)	N/A
	<b>Soil texture</b>	N/A
	<b>Organic matter</b> (Craft et al. 1991)	N/A
	<b>Sedimentation</b> (Cahoon and Turner 1989 for marker horizons; Boumans and Day 1993; Cornu and Sadro 2002 for SET)	Survey topography, establish elevation stakes or Sediment Erosion Table (SET) for later comparison
Core Parameter: Nekton	<b>Species diversity and/or relative abundance</b> (Note: relative abundance can only be compared for samples collected using same gear)	N/A
	<b>Density or abundance</b> (#/m2)	N/A
	<b>Species survivorship</b>	N/A
	<b>Growth</b>	N/A
	<b>Secondary production</b>	N/A
	<b>Size</b>	N/A

Qualitative Method	Quantitative Method
Record observations of high-water marks, drift lines, etc.	Above ground: use automatic water level gauge; below ground: use shallow well with automatic recorder
Direct observation to indicate major pathways and channels on map	Datalogger
Estimate as high or low based on visual observation and compared to other nearby sites	Measure inflow or outflow with flumes or weirs; measure interior flow with current meters
Walk edge and mark on map	GPS edge at spring high tide
N/A	Combine site survey and water height to calculate prism
Identify common species and map dominant community types; note invasive species and vigor	Establish transects and/ or quadrats; identify all species; map dominant communities
Estimate percent cover	Collect percent cover along permanent transects
Visually estimate percent of plants alive	Count plants and determine percent of plants alive
Estimate heights of plants compared to previous year's height	Measure height of plants
Estimate percent of dominant plants flowering/seeding	Determine percent of plants flowering/seeding by species in plots
Taste	Hand-held refractometer at established stations
Use soil texture triangle to classify based on feel (Horner and Raedeke 1989)	Particle size analysis of the different soil horizons (Folk 1974)
N/A	Soil moisture and organic matter in top layer at stations
Establish pre-marked elevation stakes at critical points across site; estimate depth increase or decrease in sediment	Survey topography; SET with marker horizons
Seine and/or trap fish to determine presence/absence and relative abundance; identify species	Use purse seines (Hartman and Herke 1987), combination seine and block nets (Weinstein 1979), pop nets (Connolly 1994), lift net (Wenner et al. 1996), throw traps (Jordan et al. 1997, Raposa and Roman 2001); fyke nets (Neckles and Dionne 2000); count and identify all species. General information on, and comparison of, different capture techniques (Murphy and Willis 1996, Kneib 1997, Rozas and Minello 1997).
N/A	Use purse seines, combination seine and block nets, pop nets, throw traps, or other enclosure gear to determine density by species. Papers that describe use of gear to determine density (Rozas and Minello 1999, Raposa and Roman 2003, Piazza and La Peyre 2007).
N/A	Mark and recapture study (van Montfrans et al. 1991; Murphy and Willis 1996).
N/A	Otolith analysis (Murphy and Willis 1996); field growth experiments (e.g., Stunz et al. 2002; Posey et al. 2005; Shervette and Gelwick 2008).
N/A	Use density, growth, and survivorship data with production model (Roth et al. 2008)
N/A	Use variety of quantitative gear to sample most common fish; measure (Murphy and Willis 1996, Kneib 1997, Rozas and Minello 1997).



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring



- *Consider including a reference site that represents the impaired condition of the project (Cornu & Sadro 2002).* For instance, consider an adjacent impounded wetland that has not yet been restored to serve as a baseline condition over time. This site can show how much the restored habitat has changed, which might be especially important if no pre-restoration data can be collected.
- *Choose reference sites that are close in time and space* and have as many similar characteristics to the disturbed (to-be-restored) habitat as possible.
- *Try to identify several reference wetlands, because wetlands of the same type can vary considerably in their characteristics.* Looking at multiple wetlands of the type you hope to establish can help you understand the natural range of variation of the wetland type (Stedman 2003).
- *Ground-level photographs* (preferably photo stations) for identification of some plant species, general degree of plant growth, general water levels. Methods also exist to transform repeat photography into a quantitative analysis through techniques such as grid analysis (Hall 2002); and
- *General observations* such as water clarity, floating vegetation or macroalgae, presence of trash, evidence of human use, bird species presence, vegetation condition (stressed, flowering, healthy), presence of invasive plants, evidence of erosion, and the integrity of structures.

Local community volunteers can be invaluable in terms of gathering qualitative assessment data such as ground-level photographs and general site observations.



*For more ideas on ways to involve volunteers in monitoring activities, see **Chapter 8: Community Support***

### Qualitative vs. Quantitative Data

Time and budget constraints generally do not allow every aspect of a project to benefit from quantitative data collection. However, qualitative data collection can be informative. Neither quantitative nor qualitative data alone can provide a comprehensive evaluation of how the site conditions at a restored site are evolving to match the target design objectives.

Qualitative data that can be useful for evaluating project restoration effectiveness include (IWWR 2003):

- *Aerial photographs* to show general hydrology, evidence of channelization, and the extent of plant covering at the site;

### Principal Monitoring Periods

There are three principal periods of effective project monitoring and evaluation: baseline ecological conditions, as-built assessment following construction, and scientific monitoring of the ecosystem response to barrier removal.

**Baseline assessment.** The first period is often termed pre-restoration monitoring and establishes the conditions prior to construction work. It provides the baseline to which all future data can be compared. Ideally, baseline data are collected under a range of conditions over a long period of time – at least one year of pre-construction data is critical at both project and reference sites.

**As-built assessment.** The second period requires the team to survey and record the actual construction results, then compare the results to the design and construction plans. For tidal hydrology restoration, the construction plans and the as-built

**“Monitoring is an investment in the future of the next project – it is not a report card on the current project.”**

**- Tom Cuba, Delta Seven, Inc.**



*Quadrat surveys of seagrass were taken both before and after installation of the new bridge at the Fort DeSoto Park Tidal Hydrology project in Florida.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*

assessment will likely include information on the openings for water flow (types, numbers, size, invert elevation), velocities of flow across a tidal range, duration and frequency of inundation, and (if constructed or altered) the width, depth, and number of tidal channels. For projects with plantings or invasive species control, assessment

would include planting density, invasive species remaining, or other measurable outcomes. As-built data provide the starting point to allow the tracking of the site's evolution, allows resource managers to make strategic adjustments to projects, and provides invaluable knowledge to inform planning and funding of future projects.



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

If the as-built characteristics do not meet the expectation of the design, then corrections may be possible early in the monitoring phase. The project team should continue to monitor these construction characteristics to determine if corrections are needed in the future.

 *For more information on construction monitoring, see **Chapter 6: Construction and Maintenance***

### Scientific monitoring and evaluation.

The third period of monitoring entails assessing those parameters that indicate if a site can sustain key ecological and biological functions. This stage generally uses the same methods and tracks the same parameters as baseline monitoring and as-built assessments. This monitoring period relates specifically to the goals and objectives of the project and allows for careful comparison of the project site to the baseline condition and reference site(s) over time. It may examine changes in water quality, fish assemblage and biomass, soil characteristics, sedimentation processes, and vegetation composition and coverage.

## Considerations for Developing Scientific Evaluation Plans

Monitoring strategies should be developed for all three principal phases of monitoring. However, developing a plan for the scientific evaluation phase will take the most time and consideration. Below are some tips for developing effective strategies for short- and long-term monitoring; monitoring frequency and duration; determining the “footprint,” or area of impact, of the restoration project; meeting regulatory monitoring requirements; and funding monitoring activities.

**Short-term monitoring.** Monitoring for short-term indicators of effectiveness allows the team to employ adaptive management actions based on actual changes observed. Short-term monitoring of hydrology can be used to verify that construction actions resulted in the desired site changes caused by water movement and the spatial extent of tidal inundation. Vegetation is also an effective parameter for short-term monitoring, especially if the removal of invasive vegetation was part of the project. Both parameters may require frequent data collection in the initial weeks and months following construction, and again periodically throughout the long-term monitoring phase (see below). It may be helpful to consider the short-term plan as a more intensive monitoring period nested within the larger, comprehensive monitoring plan.

**Long-term monitoring.** Long-term monitoring allows for the most robust comparison to the baseline (Thom 2000; Watson and Novelty 2004). The long-term monitoring plan will include the full monitoring strategy – from pre-construction data collection to some time after construction (minimum five years, ideally 20 years or longer) and will collect data under a wide range of environmental conditions. Long-term monitoring will require data collection at given intervals or times of year most appropriate for each parameter. Vegetation and faunal community composition, as well as soil characteristics, can take several years to begin to resemble natural site conditions (Gray et al. 2002, Thom et al. 2002). Budgets are often limited, so decide carefully which parameters



*A water gauge is used at the Little River Marsh Restoration site in New Hampshire to measure restored water flow through the tidal creeks.*

*Photo Credit: UNH*



## Determining the Restoration Footprint

As part of monitoring and assessing the impact of a project, restoration practitioners and funding agencies often try to determine the actual area restored by the project (e.g., acres/hectares restored).

For projects where tidal waters are reintroduced to a previously “dry” area, determining the **footprint**, or extent of the site restored (e.g., flooded area), is not difficult. Determining if the objectives of the project have been achieved and over how large an area, however, can be a challenge.

For projects where flow of tidal waters is improved rather than reintroduced, determining the footprint of restored area becomes more complicated. Collecting pre- and post-construction data at *multiple locations* throughout the reference and project sites is critical to determining restored acreage.

Data collection for multiple locations at both sites will provide a spatial component to monitoring that will make it possible to scientifically examine the extent of the site impacted by the project activities.

to measure, the intensity of measurements, and how long the monitoring should continue.

**Frequency and duration.** Natural variability, rate of site change, funding and project timelines, and project goals and objectives determine how often and how long to monitor. Natural variability is more likely to hinder the ability to identify problems or trajectories toward functional habitat conditions in less frequently monitored project and reference sites. However, if funds are inadequate for more frequent monitoring, most parameters should be monitored at least once a year: vegetation during the growing season and animals during breeding, nesting, and/or migration seasons. Hydrologic characteristics should ideally be monitored during maximum and minimum flood and ebb tides, but need not be measured each year. Changes in sedimentary characteristics are often slower than changes to other parameters (Simenstad and Thom 1996), so it is reasonable to monitor these less frequently (every two to three years) but for a longer time (10 to 20 years). Additional recommendations for frequency of monitoring are included in **Table 7a** (page 60).

**Funding scientific monitoring.** The funding available for scientific monitoring is typically a small proportion of the total funds allocated to a project. Costs have been found to average 13 percent of total project costs, ranging from 3 to 62 percent (Thom and Wellman 1996).

Decisions related to parameters, techniques, frequency, and duration of sample collections are often the product of budgetary constraint, so the team must plan carefully to ensure the scientific validity of the evaluation process and its utility in informing future decisions. Resources devoted to monitoring may reduce the funds available to restore the project site, but this challenge can be mitigated. For instance, choosing parameters and data collection techniques that are similar to those used in other projects may make data more comparable across sites and improve understanding of the project effectiveness.

Surrogate indicators may provide more cost-effective and feasible options for measuring project effectiveness in the future. For example, monitoring fish populations can be expensive, but it may be possible to estimate fish production by analyzing data for surrogate indicators such as hydrology and vegetation growth (Haas et al. 2004, Weinstein et al. 2005). Additional ways to control costs include using volunteers to collect data and choosing reference sites that have on-going data collection funded for other purposes (e.g., NERRs), with parameters of significance to the restoration site.



For more on how to defray project costs by using volunteer labor, see **Chapter 8: Community Support**



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring



### Regulatory-required monitoring.

It is important to note that permits issued by regulatory agencies will also specify required monitoring parameters and reporting schedules. Pre-permit discussions with appropriate regulatory personnel about these requirements allow the team to incorporate these requirements into the evaluation plan, rather than duplicating effort later.

### Advancing the Science of Tidal Hydrology Restoration

It may not be practical, or even efficient, for all projects to receive the level of scientific evaluation described above. All projects should receive basic monitoring to provide some degree of confidence that the design criteria were met. However, practitioners overseeing or partnering on many projects might more efficiently enhance overall understanding of restoration ecology by intensively monitoring a carefully selected subset of projects and evaluating their functionality in comparison to reference sites.

What constitutes basic data as opposed to more in-depth scientific evaluation may be a product of the intensity, frequency, and precision of data collection efforts. For instance, the same type of data may be collected from two sites – focusing on similar core parameters – yet one project may only collect data on an annual basis, using a simple, precise technique for each core parameter, while another site may collect data several times a year, using multiple techniques (of differing precision and accuracy) to describe each core parameter. These two levels of effort would both yield informative results. One provides information about general site conditions in comparison to a reference site, while the other yields much greater information that could aid the advancement of habitat restoration science.

In order to apply the approach of comparison among project sites over time at a regional level, it is recommended that region-specific core parameters (more

specific than the four included in this document) be agreed upon and adopted. The Gulf of Maine provides an example of this kind of core characterization (Neckles et al. 2002), resulting in the Global Programme of Action Coalition for the Gulf of Maine (GPAC; see <http://www.gpac-gom.org>) Protocol.

Core variables include:

- Base map;
- Hydrology (including at least the two week lunar cycles, spring, and neap tides);
- Marsh surface elevation data;
- Soils/sediment (pore water salinity);
- Vegetation (percent cover by species, invasive species height, and density);
- Nekton (species composition and richness, abundance by species, length, biomass); and
- Birds (species composition and richness, abundance by species, breeding behavior).

Mimicking this type of regional planning effort to establish core parameters and data collection protocols could greatly enhance the science of tidal hydrology restoration. The Coast-wide Reference Monitoring System (CRMS-Wetlands), developed in Louisiana, is another model that could be utilized and adopted to improve scientific evaluation of restoration projects.

*Baseline (pre-restoration) trawling surveys followed by twice-yearly post-restoration surveys allow for comparison of species composition at the Tarpon Bay Hydrology Restoration Project in Florida.*

Photo Credit: Florida Department of Environmental Protection



## Coast-wide Reference Monitoring System (CRMS-Wetlands) and Barrier Island Comprehensive Monitoring (BICM) Programs

CRMS-Wetlands provides long-term data from hundreds of established reference sites throughout the various vegetated habitats of coastal Louisiana. The sites span the range of habitat health, from disturbed to pristine. Monitoring sites were intentionally placed both inside and outside boundaries of existing and planned restoration projects. At each site, aspects of ecosystem structure and function (including elevation dynamics, vegetative assemblage, and hydrologic parameters) are measured (Steyer et al. 2003). The data are made available on-line to the public after thorough quality assurance/quality control. The State Office of Coastal Protection and Restoration (OCP) works with the U.S. Geological Survey on the management of the CRMS-Wetlands program.

A complementary program to CRMS-Wetlands is the Barrier Island Comprehensive Monitoring (BICM) program, which monitors the mainland shoreline of the Louisiana coast with special emphasis on sandy beaches and barrier islands. Specific parameters monitored include bathymetry, topography, shoreline change, land loss, habitats, and storm impact.

As these program databases grow, they will allow for both project-specific evaluations and cumulative evaluation of the effects of projects on a hydrologic basis and coastwide level (Steyer 2000), and could serve as a model for evaluating wetland ecosystems in other locations as well.



For further information, please visit the following websites:

<http://www.lacoast.gov/crms2/Home.aspx>

<http://dnr.louisiana.gov/crm/coastres/project.asp?id=CRMS-WETLANDS>

<http://dnr.louisiana.gov/crm/coastres/project.asp?id=BICM>





## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 
- 





## Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Fort Desoto Park, Pinellas County, FL*

Tidal flow between bays in the Fort DeSoto Park Aquatic Habitat Management Area in Pinellas County, Florida, was severed due to the construction of a dredge-and-fill causeway designed to connect the island chain in the late 1950s. The lack of tidal flow between the bays resulted in extreme summer water temperatures, low dissolved oxygen, high sediment hydrogen sulfide concentrations, stress to seagrass meadows, and low faunal habitat suitability. To relieve these conditions and improve tidal circulation, a portion of the causeway was replaced in 2005 with a 40-foot span bridge. (Plans to construct a second bridge were curtailed due to cost.)

The project's scientific evaluation plan incorporated both impact and reference sites, two years of pre-construction data, and three years of post-construction data (to date), with an estimated cost of \$100,000 per year. Indicators of all four core parameters were monitored, including hydrology (temperature, salinity, dissolved oxygen), vegetation (community composition, seagrass density, shoot counts, lengths and widths, epiphytes), soil (hydrogen sulfide concentration), and fauna (macrofauna identification, length, width, weight).

Only three years after construction, a few parameters do indicate a response to the bridge construction. These include improved water quality conditions in terms of extreme temperatures, salinity, and dissolved oxygen. Data suggest epiphytic growth on the seagrass is decreasing in the impact area. It also appears fish populations are responding positively, but the extreme natural variability of this measure makes results somewhat inconclusive. Multiple data set trends toward reference site conditions provide evidence that the project goals are being achieved. Based on this work, project partners agree that construction of the second bridge may be necessary to yield the most complete restoration possible at the park.

Natural variability has made it very difficult to follow a signal of change for any one parameter. Four major tropical storm events followed the bridge opening, and a major red-tide occurred the next year. Comparing pre-construction data to data collected during extreme events is challenging and supports the position that long-term data collection both before and after construction is the only valid way to follow a trajectory of change.

Interestingly, the parameter that will likely have the largest impact on the long-term condition and habitat suitability of the site will also take the longest to respond. Elevated sediment hydrogen sulfide concentrations, which directly impact infauna and seagrass conditions, may require several decades to respond to the improved hydrology and dissolved oxygen concentrations, thereby improving ecosystem health.



For more information, see the **Fort Desoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 110).

*A non-toxic dye was released near the newly constructed bridge when the final barrier to tidal flow was breached. The dispersion of dye is evidence of the tidal flow moving through the new bridge opening.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*





# Chapter 8: Community Support



Often the general public is not well informed about historic tidal modifications and their associated ecological impacts. Consequently, vast areas of tidally restricted aquatic and estuarine habitat remain degraded despite the potential to be restored to productive estuaries. Developing public awareness of the need for restoration and gaining public support for projects are challenges that require the development of community relations programs. Governmental and non-governmental organizations, including environmental non-profit groups, must adopt strategies that nurture the development of an informed and politically active constituency in order to realize the widespread restoration of tidal areas.

Building organizational capacity and dedicated staff in the areas of education, advocacy, and volunteer coordination may be the most important investments toward the restoration of healthy estuaries in the Southeast U.S. This section provides:

- Recommendations for developing long-term community support;
- Information about establishing and maintaining a volunteer base;
- Resources for building community support; and
- Community support highlight project: Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project, Sanibel Island, Florida.

Additional community support resources and summary recommendations can be found in the *Toolkit* (page 212).

## Building Programmatic Support for Restoration

Ensuring that all the resource groups understand and appreciate the significance of productive coastal estuaries and the urgency for a long-term coastal restoration strategy is important (Steyer 2000). Organizations adopting a long-term, programmatic approach to restoring tidal hydrology on a regional scale must employ multiple public involvement strategies. Some of these strategies include:

- *Securing political involvement.* Adequate resources and the appropriate policy mechanisms needed to address restoration opportunities at a meaningful scale can often only be generated through public interaction with legislative bodies. Support at the legislative level can result in direct comprehensive funding of sustained programs rather than the piecing together of smaller efforts and initiatives. These political activities are often undertaken by environmental nonprofit organizations.



For a list of related environmental nonprofit organizations, see the **Toolkit** (page 213).

- *Marketing completed projects.* Utilize media during construction and volunteer events to provide visibility of project activities. After the project is complete, well-maintained interpretive signs at accessible locations can educate the public in perpetuity. Producing videos to air on local cable channels can provide a cost-effective means for reaching large audiences to demonstrate project benefits.
- *Hosting public tours and celebrations.* Invite the public to participate in planned site tours hosted through all phases of project implementation. Consider having a project dedication celebration that includes partners, dignitaries, and members of the public.
- *Engaging the public in hands-on activities.* See the **Volunteers and Monitoring** section below (page 74).

A local class participated in data collection activities at the Little River Marsh Project in New Hampshire.

Photo Credit: UNH





*Volunteers prepare to plant red mangroves at the Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in Sanibel Island, FL. This project was initiated by local citizens interested in reversing the negative impacts caused by restricted tidal flow.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*

## Building Project-Level Support

When developing plans for tidal hydrology restoration projects, it is important to account for concerns of the affected community. Neighborhoods, government agencies, private consultants, and industry must all participate in planning, implementation, and evaluation of the restoration as equals. Otherwise, the local community is not likely to develop a sense of ownership (Cassagrande 1997). Projects that may be technically sound risk never getting off the ground if the project team ignores or overlooks public perceptions and needs. When a project team addresses community concerns and the project receives widespread support, expedited planning, permitting, and project implementation can result.

The project team should develop a thorough strategy regarding how and when to engage the public in the project planning process, depending on project

aspects such as landownership, the project scope, and the proximity of the project to populated areas. Typical community concerns often focus on the expected construction timeline and footprint, as well as on new tidal flooding patterns—especially projections about potential flooding during extreme weather events.

---

*For more on identifying appropriate sites and project feasibility considerations, see*



**Chapter 2: Project Identification, Feasibility and Planning**



**Chapter 4: Project Design**

---

While each tidal hydrology restoration project will present unique community outreach challenges, **Table 8a** (next page) outlines some basic aspects of a public involvement strategy to consider.



## Community Support

Table 8a. Strategies for successful public support.

Strategy	Guidance
<b>Engage early</b>	Communicate early with the community to help gain approval from landowners directly affected by or adjacent to the project area. Having affected stakeholders serve as project proponents can help build public support.
<b>Hold public meetings</b>	Provide the public an opportunity to weigh in on the project idea long before plans have been finalized. It is also helpful to make field trips to restored ecosystems, so that community members can envision a finished product in their neighborhood (Casagrande 1997).
<b>Clearly translate project goals and objectives</b>	Avoid complex science jargon during public meetings and when developing outreach materials. Use non-scientific language, well-versed speakers, graphics, and charts to avoid confusion and educate your audience. Modeling activities can be especially challenging to describe. Remember that the ecological benefits of restoring tidal flow are not necessarily obvious to the general public.
<b>Incorporate community interests</b>	Understand community interests related to the characteristics and history of the project location. On occasion, restoration projects can be designed to meet primary ecological goals while simultaneously satisfying community goals with limited additional expense. For instance, aesthetic benefits realized from a project may provide increases in adjacent property values.
<b>Utilize success stories</b>	Enable community understanding of the project. Utilize simple schematics and visualizations of similar projects during meetings, in outreach materials, and when working with the media.
<b>Address misinformation</b>	Use the media to disseminate correct information that directly addresses community concerns if misinformation is widespread.
<b>Reexamine the project</b>	Reexamine the project if substantial and valid community opposition exists. Incorporate community concerns into subsequent plans, or if opposition is insurmountable, accept that the project may not be viable.



Volunteers provided needed manpower to remove invasive plant species at the Eden Landing Salt Pond Project in California.

Photo Credit: NOAA



## Developing Volunteer Strategies

Developing and implementing a comprehensive volunteer strategy is a key step toward effectively building public support. The inclusion of volunteers for a one-time task may be a simple undertaking, but investing resources in a sustained community involvement strategy to implement education, outreach, advocacy, and volunteer coordination can provide an exponential increase in project benefits. The ultimate goal of such a volunteer and involvement program is to educate and inspire citizens to take ownership of their public resources and to serve as a voice for future restoration and protection actions and policies.

Some specific benefits of an effective volunteer strategy include:

- *Financial benefits.* At the project level, volunteers can be very useful for reducing costs while helping meet matching funds requirements for grants. Some granting programs accept a standard value for volunteer contributions. In 2009, volunteer service was valued at \$20.85 per hour.



For up-to-date valuations, visit [http://www.independentsector.org/programs/research/volunteer\\_time.html](http://www.independentsector.org/programs/research/volunteer_time.html)

- *Project maintenance.* Engaging volunteers in tidal restoration project construction and maintenance may inspire them to continue in a long-term stewardship role.
- *Expanded capacity.* Dedicated volunteers sometimes take on more complex roles, including recruitment and management of new volunteers, as well as initiation and management of their own projects.
- *Stronger grant proposals.* Grant proposals with volunteer, education, and outreach components are typically ranked higher by funding agencies during the review process than similar projects that omit these components.

## CONSIDER

### Utilizing the Professional Capacity of Volunteers

Investigate the skill sets of available volunteers. Biologists, engineers, heavy equipment owners/operators, teachers, graphic designers, and grant administrators can provide particularly valuable volunteer services. Individuals living in proximity to a project site may have professional backgrounds that can assist with complicated aspects of project implementation.

For example, the management of the Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project in South Carolina was enhanced by the expertise of a local retired environmental administrator. The resident led recruitment and coordination of partners and volunteers, secured grants, and completed project reports. The grant matching funds associated with these complex tasks were commensurate with the value of the service provided, rather than a standard volunteer hourly rate based on manual labor.



For more, see the **Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 146).

- *Public exposure.* Volunteer events often gain the attention of media outlets and local politicians.

Volunteer coordination is a well-documented practice featured in several guidance manuals. A list of these resources is provided in the **Toolkit**, page 213. Despite the benefits of volunteers, it is important to consider the cost and time required to train volunteers, the need for oversight, and the potential liability if volunteers are injured (IWWR 2003). There are also many dangerous and complex elements of tidal hydrology restoration, such as heavy equipment operation and technical design components, that can not be readily undertaken by volunteers.



## Community Support



*Investing resources into developing a volunteer monitoring program can provide numerous benefits to restoration organizations and their projects.*

*Photo Credit: Dave Burdick*

## Volunteers and Monitoring

One resourceful way to engage volunteers is to involve them in long-term scientific monitoring activities. This can provide multiple benefits, as monitoring is usually a requirement associated with the use of grant funds and is necessary to gauge project outcomes. Often the burden of monitoring can be decreased by utilizing volunteers who live close to the project.

Using volunteers for frequent monitoring also allows for more rapid response to potential project performance issues, such as tidal blockages from organic debris or sedimentation, invasive vegetation, vandalism, or illegal dumping. High-frequency scientific monitoring is typically not financially feasible; however, an “adopt a wetland” style program, in which volunteers assist with scientific monitoring, encourages both long-term volunteer involvement and ensures consistent qualitative assessment.

Members of the public, academics, and state or federal resource managers sometimes question the validity of monitoring data gathered by volunteers. However, volunteer monitoring data is often as accurate and valid as the data gathered by academics

and professionals (Fore et al. 2001; Canfield et al. 2002; Ringvall et al. 2005). The key to ensuring data quality is to provide thorough training for volunteers in standard monitoring protocols.

Some points to consider when developing a volunteer monitoring program:

- *Volunteering capabilities.* Acknowledge the skill set of your volunteers. Limit volunteer involvement with complicated techniques such as vegetation monitoring or fish counts. Consider tasks associated with bird, mammal, and other megafauna monitoring.
- *School programs.* Involve local schools in monitoring programs. Schools are helpful in amassing long-term data sets over multiple years. When compiling this data, be sure to check quality and discard outlier data points.
- *Academic oversight.* Involve university researchers in the development of monitoring plans and provide these researchers with the best data collection volunteers. Dr. David Burdick, with



the University of New Hampshire, implemented a monitoring plan incorporating volunteer data collection for the Little River Marsh Restoration Project. He found that their contribution has been beneficial for long-term repeated measures.



For more information, see the **Little River Marsh Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 158).

Below are some monitoring activities critical for evaluating effectiveness of tidal hydrology restoration projects that may more easily apply to volunteers.

- *Invasive vegetation.* Consider training volunteers to identify one or two types of specific invasive plants. Provide them with the appropriate tools to document the species' presence or absence and removal, if applicable. It is generally advisable not to assign volunteers activities requiring percent cover estimates, since the results require calibration and may create problems with data analysis.
- *Hydrology.* By establishing permanent stations at the project site, certain tools, such as a staff gauge, allow for data collection on tidal height and period, requiring only periodic visual observation and recording of information.
- *Salinity.* Simple tools (e.g., refractometer and data sheets) allow for the collection of many relevant data points.
- *Water quality.* Many companies sell inexpensive water quality kits that are very simple to use in the field with straightforward training techniques and instruction manuals. Typical water quality kits test for dissolved oxygen, salinity, pH, and more.
- *Bird counts and identification.* Bird lovers enjoy watching, identifying, and counting birds.
- *Photopoint.* Visual markers such as numbered wooden posts can be established throughout the project site. Volunteers can then use a compass for orientation, a camera, and a data sheet indicating the direction to take photos from any given post. It is also useful to provide an example photo taken from each photopoint to allow for a refinement of orientation. While typically qualitative in nature, a photo can often provide more information than quantitative data points.



For more information on volunteers and monitoring, see **Chapter 7: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring.**



Staff gauges are easily used by volunteers to determine tidal height.

Photo Credit:  
NOAA (Steve Block)



PROJECT HIGHLIGHT

## Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Sanibel Island, Lee County, FL*

During the South Florida population boom of the 1950s and 1960s, local developers used dredge and fill construction activities to create vehicular causeways connecting Sanibel and Captiva Islands to the mainland. Unfortunately, these causeways bisected Clam and Dinkins Bayous, halting all natural tidal flushing between the two mangrove-dominated systems. The impoundment of freshwater resulted in the loss of more than 150 acres of mangroves, 20 acres of oyster reefs, and 120 acres of seagrass beds. Fish kills and algae blooms were also common occurrences following causeway construction.

Private landowners surrounding the bayous formed the Clam Bayou Preservation Association to investigate the problems and identify solutions for the system. The Association used private funds to hire a consultant to study the flow and bathymetry at the site. The Association also prompted the City of Sanibel into action with the results of this study and partnered with the city to obtain the remaining information needed to develop a project design.

The city took the lead in 2006 with the installation of three 10x10-foot box culverts under the causeway. Citizens have remained actively engaged, planting more than 5,000 mangroves over the course of multiple volunteer days to help repopulate mangrove islands within the Bayou. Rob Loflin, City of Sanibel project manager, acknowledges that local citizens “drove and sped up” the process.



For more information, see the **Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Portfolio** (page 128).

*Citizen volunteers planted over 5,000 mangroves following installation of the box culverts at the Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Project in South Florida.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*





**Active restoration design strategy**

Construction activities across a large area relative to the overall size of the area to be restored (as compared to passive design strategies) and/or characterized by regular and scheduled long-term maintenance. *Examples include the installment, maintenance, and operation of a water control structure, tidal creek creation, or other major land alterations.*

**Adaptive management**

A management approach that involves monitoring the outcomes of a project or issue and, on the basis of the monitoring, improving the way the project is managed.

**As-built assessment**

Measurement and assessment of the actual constructed or installed project design components immediately following final construction activities; describes physical and/or functional characteristics in comparison to the final design.

**Bathymetry**

Measurement of depths of water in oceans, seas, and lakes; also the information derived from such measurements.

**Benthic**

Pertaining to the bottom (bed) of a water body.

**Construction footprint**

The actual area or boundary of physical construction activities; the actual project area affected by construction activities may be much larger than the "construction footprint."

**Culvert**

A conduit used to allow passage of water below ground level. *Often a large diameter metal, concrete, or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe used to allow water to pass underneath a road, railway, or embankment, for example.*

**Ecosystem**

A conceptual unit comprising organisms interacting with each other and their environment. An ecosystem has the major attributes of structure, function, complexity, interaction and interdependency, temporal change, and no inherent definition of spatial dimension.

**Estuary**

Regions of interaction between rivers and nearshore ocean waters, where tidal action and river flow create a mixing of fresh water and saltwater. These areas may include bays, mouths of rivers, salt marshes, and lagoons.

**Field protocols**

A formal plan describing the standardized procedures and techniques to be used in conducting construction activities.

**Floodplain**

Typically flat land areas adjacent to a river, stream, lake, estuary, or other water body that is subject to flooding. This area, if left undisturbed, acts to store excess floodwater. The 100-year floodplain, or lands that have a 1 percent chance of flooding in any given year, are typically regulated for protection by federal, state, and municipal agencies.

**Flow velocity**

Distance traveled by a packet of fluid in a unit of time. *Influences the options for project design, specifically in regard to appropriate sizes for breaches, culverts, etc.*

**Geographic Information System (GIS)**

A data management tool that provides users with a spatial understanding of locations or events based on georeferenced data. *GIS is often used to locate specific features on a landscape or analyze relationships between features. Successfully implemented, GIS aids goal setting, data analysis, and monitoring ecosystem integrity.*

**Global Positioning System (GPS)**

A system based on satellites that allows a user with a receiver to determine precise coordinates for their location on the Earth's surface. These are a primary source of spatial data used in GIS systems.

**Hydric soil**

Soils that remain saturated year round.

**Hydrology**

Study of water and its properties, including its distribution, movement, and quality.

**Hydrologic model**

Simplified, conceptual representations of part of the hydrologic cycle; primarily used for hydrologic prediction and for understanding hydrologic processes. *Allows for analysis of current site hydrology and prediction of potential impacts from alternative restoration project designs.*

**Impoundment**

A body of water confined by a dam, dike, floodgate, or other barrier used to exclude or control the influence of water flow.

**Invasive species**

A species that does not naturally occur in a specific area and whose introduction is likely to cause economic or environmental harm.

**Land cover**

The physical material at the surface of the Earth. Land covers include grass, asphalt, trees, bare ground, water, etc. *There are two primary methods for capturing information on land cover: field survey and thorough analysis of remotely sensed imagery.*

**Land use**

The manner in which a parcel of land is used or occupied.

### Lagoon

A shallow body of water that usually has a shallow restricted inlet from the sea; typically characterized by low salinity (less than 10 parts per million) and containing less than one-third seawater.

### Levee

A large dike or embankment built to prevent inundation, often having an access road along the top, which is designed as part of a system to protect land from floods.

### Mosaic habitat

Multiple microhabitat types patched together potentially providing for a range of ecosystem services and allowing for on-site habitat migration as a hedge against sea level rise.

*For example, incorporation of freshwater, upland, high marsh, and transition zones might allow the site to be more adaptable to changing conditions.*

### Nekton

Organisms that swim freely in the ocean.

### Passive design strategy

One-time construction activity resulting in a self-sustaining system with little long-term intervention; typically characterized by a relatively small area of construction activity that reintroduces or enhances tidal flow, allowing a larger area to restore naturally over time.

*For example, the small footprint of construction through removal and replacement of a section of causeway that enhances a large area of seagrass with no hands-on restoration work in the seagrass habitat.*

### Reference sites

An “ideal” undisturbed or relatively undisturbed healthy habitat that has characteristics similar to a potential restoration project.

*Reference sites can help practitioners understand hydrology modification impacts on many ecological*

*indicators, including water quality (salinity, dissolved oxygen content, or pH), vegetation, and nekton community composition. Comparisons to reference sites can also help define desired ecosystem services, and provide targets for post-restoration monitoring. Reference sites provide information about the natural range of values for the parameters used in the monitoring program and show the annual variation in these parameters.*

### Restoration (Habitat)

Process of re-establishing a self-sustaining habitat that closely resembles a natural condition in terms of structure and function. Does not focus on a single species, but rather strives to replicate the original natural ecosystem to support numerous species.

### Returning the tide

Restoring or enhancing flow of tidal waters to estuarine habitats in areas that have been historically degraded as a result of tidal barriers such as levees, dikes, causeways, and failed or undersized culverts. Barriers are breached or removed to provide a more natural tidal regime with the ultimate goal of restoring estuarine habitat functionality.

### Salinity regime

The prevailing pattern or normal set of conditions for salinity in an ecosystem. *Salinity strongly influences distribution of plant and animal communities as well as soil characteristics. Understanding the current salinity regime will aid in developing appropriate targets for post-restoration salinity regimes. Soil or interstitial salinities should also be investigated for proper plant selections.*

### Sheet flow

A thin layer of water movement over the land surface with no identifiable channels.

### Tidal footprint

The expanse of area influenced by the tidal ebb and flow. *Important for any engineering or hydrology modeling effort used to forecast the effects of hydrology modification at the site.*

### Tidal hydrology restoration

Re-establishing or enhancing movement, distribution, and quality of waters in an estuarine environment with the purpose of re-establishing habitat that closely resembles a natural condition in terms of structure and function.

### Tidal prism

Range in volume of water from high to low tide.

### Tidal regime

The prevailing pattern or normal set of conditions of the tides.

### Topography

The physical features of the land.

### Turbidity barrier

A device used to contain and control the dispersion of sediments and siltation in association with nearshore or in-water construction activities. *Examples include turbidity curtains, silt curtains, and silt barriers.*

### Wetlands

Permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions. *Examples of wetlands include freshwater and saltwater estuaries, fens, bogs and swamps, tidal marshes, prairie potholes, seagrass beds, mangroves, and forested wetlands. Cowardin et al. (1978) provides an in-depth discussion of wetland definition and classification.*

- Adam, P. 1990. *Saltmarsh Ecology*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Adam, P., Bertness, M.D., Davy, A.J. & Zedler, J.B. 2008. Saltmarsh. In N. Polunin, (Ed.) *Aquatic ecosystems*. pp. 157-171. Cambridge University Press.
- Borde, A.B., O'Rourke, L.K., Thom, R.M., Williams, G.W. & Diefenderfer, H.L. 2004. *National Review of Innovative and Successful Coastal Habitat Restoration*. Prepared by Battelle Memorial Institute for the NOAA. p. 61.
- Boumans, R.M.J., Burdick, D.M., & Dionne, M. 2002. Modeling habitat change in salt marshes after tidal restoration. *Restoration Ecology* 10: 543-555.
- Boumans, R.M.J. & Day, J.W., Jr. 1993. High precision measurements of sediment elevation in shallow coastal areas using a sediment erosion table. *Estuaries* 16:375-380.
- Bryant, J.C. & Chabreck, R.H. 1998. Effects of impoundment on vertical accretion of coastal marsh. *Estuaries* 21(3): 416-422.
- Burdick, D.M. 2000. Ecosystem indicator: Hydrology. In Neckles, H.A. & M. Dionne, (Eds.) *Regional Standards to Identify and Evaluate Tidal Wetland Restoration in the Gulf of Maine* pp. 7-9. Wells NERR Tech Report, Wells, ME.
- Cahoon, D.R. & Turner, R.E. 1989. Accretion and canal impacts in a rapidly subsiding wetland II. Feldspar marker horizon technique. *Estuaries* 12: 260-268.
- Cahoon, D.R., Reed, D.J., Kolker, A.S., Brinson, M.M., Stevenson, J.C., Riggs, S., Christian, R., Reyes, E., Voss, C. & Kunz, D. 2009. Coastal wetland sustainability. In J.G. Titus, K.E. Anderson, D.R. Cahoon, D.B. Gesch, S.K. Gill, B.T. Gutierrez, E.R. Thieler, & S.J. Williams, lead authors. *Coastal Sensitivity to Sea Level Rise: A Focus on the Mid-Atlantic Region*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.
- Calloway, J.C., Sullivan, G., Desmond, J.S., Williams, G.D., & Zedler, J.B. 2001. Assessment and monitoring. In J.B. Zedler (Ed.) *Handbook for Restoring Tidal Wetlands* pp. 271-335.
- Canfield, D.E., Jr., Brown, C.D., Bachmann, R.W., & Hoyer, M.V. 2002. Volunteer lake monitoring: Testing the reliability of data collected by the Florida LAKEWATCH program. *Lake and Reservoir Management* 18 (1): 1-9.
- Casagrande, D.G., Editor. 1997. *Restoration of an Urban Salt Marsh: An Interdisciplinary Approach*. Bulletin Series No. 100, Yale School of Forestry and Environmental Studies. [http://environment.yale.edu/publication-series/water\\_resources/807/restoration\\_of\\_an\\_urban\\_salt\\_marsh/](http://environment.yale.edu/publication-series/water_resources/807/restoration_of_an_urban_salt_marsh/)
- Cornu, C.E. & Sadro, S. 2002. Physical and functional responses to experimental marsh surface elevation manipulation in Coos Bay's South Slough. *Restoration Ecology* 10: 474-486.
- Dame, R.F. 1996. *Ecology of Marine Bivalves: An Ecosystem Approach*. CRC Press. p. 254.
- Diefenderfer, H.L., Thom, R.M. & Adkins, J.E. 2003. *Systematic Approach to Coastal Ecosystem Restoration*. Prepared for NOAA Coastal Services Center, Charleston, SC, by Battelle Marine Sciences Laboratory, Sequim, WA PNWD-3237.
- Diefenderfer, H.L., Sobocinski, K.L., Thom, R.M., May, C.W., Borde, A.B., Southard, S.L., Vavrinc, J. & Sather, N.K. 2007. *Multi-Scale Analysis of Restoration Priorities for Marine Shoreline Planning*. Prepared by Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, Battelle Marine Sciences Laboratory for the NOAA.
- Ellison, A.M. & Farnsworth, E.J. 2001. Mangrove communities. In M.D. Bertness, S.D. Gaines & M. Hay (Eds.) *Marine Community Ecology* pp. 423-442. Massachusetts: Sinauer Associates.
- Fishman Environmental Services. 1987. *Estuarine Mitigation Evaluation Report*. Final Report. Submitted to Oregon Department of Land Conservation and Development and Oregon Division of State lands. p. 77.
- Fore, L.S., Paulsen, K. & O'Laughlin, K. 2001. Assessing the performance of volunteers in monitoring streams. *Freshwater Biology* 46: 109-123.
- Frenkel, R.E. & Morlan, J.C. 1990. *Restoration of the Salmon River Salt Marshes: Retrospect and Prospect*. Final report to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Region 10, Seattle, WA.
- Gönenç, I.E. & Wolflin, J. 2005. *Coastal Lagoons: Ecosystem Processes and Modeling for Sustainable Use and Development*. CRC Press.
- Gray, A., Simenstad, C.A., Bottom, D.L. & Cornwell, T.J. 2002. Contrasting performance of juvenile salmon habitat in recovering wetlands of the Salmon River estuary, Oregon, USA. *Restoration Ecology* 10 (3): 514-526.
- Haas, H.L., Rose, K.A., Fry, B., Minello, T.J., & Rozas, L.P. 2004. Brown shrimp on the edge: Linking habitat to survival using an individual-based simulation model. *Ecological Applications* (4): 1232-1247.
- Hall, F.C. 2002. *Photo Point Monitoring Handbook: Part A: Field Procedures; Part B: Concepts and Analysis*. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Services, Pacific Northwest Research Station, General Technical Report PNW-GTR-526. <http://www.fs.fed.us/pnw/pubs/gtr526/>
- Hemminga, M. & Duarte, C.M. 2000. *Seagrass Ecology*. p. 298. Cambridge University Press.
- Interagency Workgroup on Wetland Restoration (IWWR). 2003. *An Introduction and User's Guide to Wetland Restoration*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water.

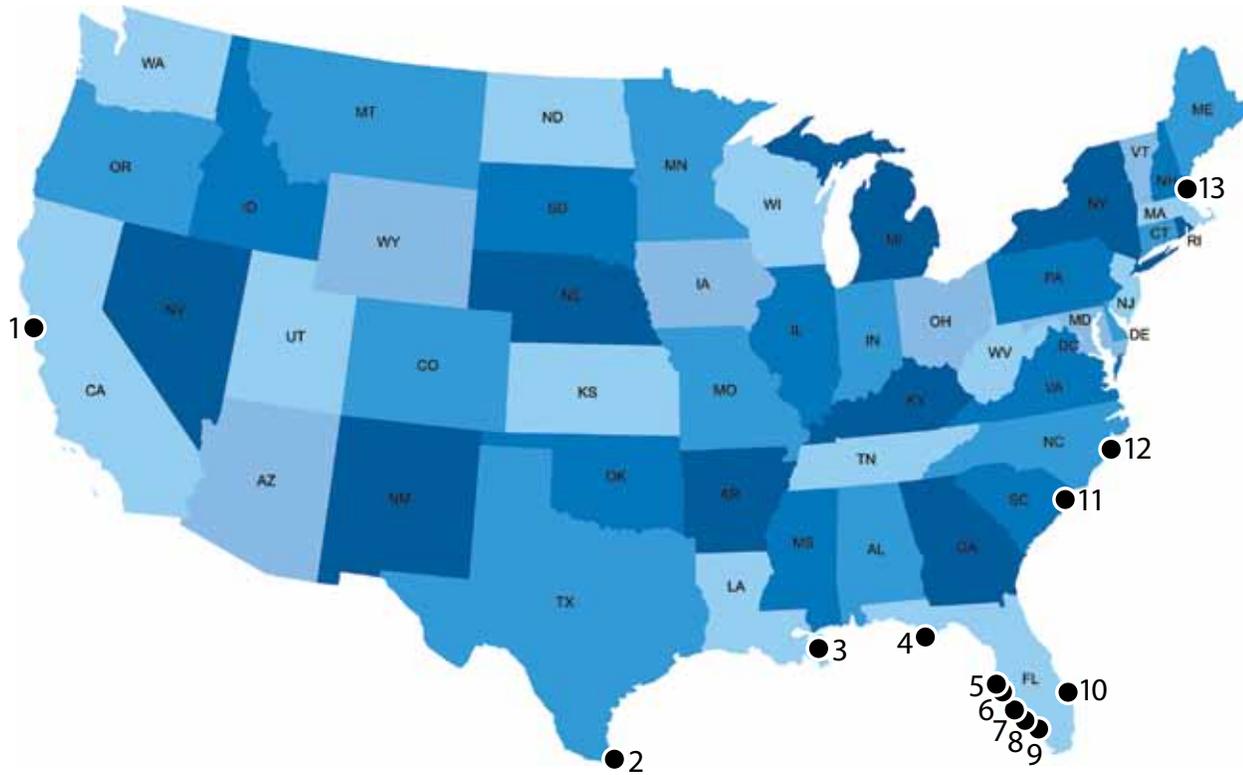
- Josselyn, M. & Buchholz, J. 1984. *Marsh Restoration in San Francisco Bay: A Guide to Design and Planning*. Technical Report #3, Tiburon Center for Environmental Studies, San Francisco State University. p. 104.
- Kennedy, V.S., Newell, R.I.E. & Eble, A.F. 2006. *The Eastern Oyster: Crassostrea virginica*. p. 734. University of Maryland Sea Grant Publications.
- Kennish, M.J. 2001. Coastal salt marsh systems in the U.S.: A review of anthropogenic impacts. *Journal of Coastal Research* 17(3): 731-748.
- Kentula, M.E., Brooks, R.P., Gwin, S., Holland, C., Sherman, A.D. & Sifneos, J. 1992. *An Approach to Improving Decision Making in Wetland Restoration and Creation*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Oregon.
- Larkum, A.W.D., Orth, R.J. & Duarte, C.M. 2006. *Seagrasses: Biology, Ecology and Conservation*. The Netherlands: Springer.
- Lenihan, H.S. & Micheli, F. 2001. Soft-sediment communities. In M.D. Bertness, S.D. Gaines & M. Hay, (Eds.) *Marine Community Ecology*. pp. 253-288. Massachusetts: Sinauer Associates.
- Meehl, G.A., Stocker, T.F., Collins, W.D., Friedlingstein, P., Gaye, A.T., Gregory, J.M., Kitoh, A., Knutti, R., Murphy, J.M., Noda, A., Raper, S.C.B., Watterson, I.G., Weaver, A.J. & Zhao, Z.C. 2007. Global climate projections. In S. Solomon, D. Qin, M. Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor & H.L. Miller, (Eds.) *Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis*. pp. 747-845. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge, United Kingdom & New York, NY, USA: Cambridge University Press.
- Meyer, D.L., Townsend, E.C. & Thayer, G.W. 1997. Stabilization and erosion control value of oyster cultch for intertidal marsh. *Restoration Ecology* 5: 93-99.
- Montalto, F.A. & Steenhuis, T.S. 2004. The link between hydrology and restoration of tidal marshes in the New York/New Jersey estuary. *Wetlands* 24(2).
- Morgan, P.A. & Short, F.T. 2002. Using functional trajectories to track constructed salt marsh development in the Great Bay Estuary, Maine/NH, USA. *Restoration Ecology* 10(3): 461-473.
- NOAA. NOAA Restoration Portal: Terms and Definitions. Retrieved December 17, 2008, from <http://habitat.noaa.gov/restorationtechniques/public/terms.cfm>.
- NOAA. NOAA's Coral Reef Information System: Glossary of Terminology. Retrieved December 17, 2008, from [http://www8.nos.noaa.gov/coris\\_glossary/index.aspx?letter=a](http://www8.nos.noaa.gov/coris_glossary/index.aspx?letter=a).
- NOAA Coastal Services Center. *Glossary of Coastal Terminology*. Prepared by Brian Voigt (March 1998). Retrieved December 17, 2008, from <http://www.csc.noaa.gov/text/glossary.html>.
- NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service. *NOAA Fisheries Glossary*. Retrieved December 17, 2008, from <http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/fishwatch/glossary.htm>.
- NOAA Restoration Center. *National Estuaries Restoration Inventory: Glossary of Terms*. Retrieved December 17, 2008, from <https://neri.noaa.gov/neri/glossary.html>.
- NOAA Restoration Center. 2008. Restoring Tidal Hydrology: Breaking Down Barriers: workshop proceedings. NOAA Coastal Services Center, Charleston, SC. NOAA/CSC/RPT 08-3.
- National Research Council (NRC). 1992. *Restoration of Aquatic Ecosystems: Science, Technology, and Public Policy*. Washington, D.C.: National Academy Press.
- NRC. 1994. *Restoring and Protecting Marine Habitat: The role of Engineering and Technology*. Washington D.C.: National Academy Press.
- Neckles, H.A., Dionne, M., Burdick, D.M., Roman, C.T., Buchsbaum, R. & Hutchins, E. 2002. A monitoring protocol to assess tidal restoration of salt marshes on local and regional scales. *Restoration Ecology* 10: 556- 563.
- Newell, R.I.E. 1988. Ecological changes in Chesapeake Bay: Are they the result of overharvesting the American oyster, *Crassostrea virginica*? In *Understanding the Estuary: Proceedings of a Conference*, pp. 29-31. Chesapeake Research Consortium Publication 129, CBP/TRS 24/88. Baltimore, Maryland.
- Nicholls, R.J., Wong, P.P., Burkett, V.R., Codignotto, J.O., Hay, J.E., McLean, R.F., Ragoonaden, S. & Woodroffe, C.D. 2007. Coastal systems and low lying areas. In M.L. Parry, O.F. Canziani, J.P. Palutikof, P.J. van der Linden & C.E. Hanson, (Eds.) *Climate Change 2007: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability*. Contribution of Working Group II to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge, United Kingdom: Cambridge University Press.
- Restore America's Estuaries and NOAA. 2002. *A National Strategy to Restore Coastal and Estuarine Habitat*. Restore America's Estuaries, Arlington, VA. <http://www.estuaries.org>.
- Ringvall, A., Petersson, H., Ståhl, G. & Lämås, T. 2005. Surveyor consistency in presence/absence sampling for monitoring vegetation in a boreal forest. *Forest Ecology and Management* 212: 109-117.
- Roman, C.T., Raposa, K.B., Adamowicz, S.C., James-Pirri, M.J. & Catena, J.G. 2002. Quantifying vegetation and nekton response to tidal restoration of a New England salt marsh. *Restoration Ecology* 10: 450-460.
- Shafer D., Herczog, B., Moulton, D., Sipocz, A., Rozas, L., Onuf, C. & Miller, W. 2001. *Regional Guidebook for Application of Hydrogeomorphic Assessments to Northwest GOM Tidal*

- Fringe Wetlands*. Field Test Draft Report ERDC, EL TR-01-X, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, MS.
- Shellenbarger Jones, A., Bosch, C. & Strange, E. 2009. Vulnerable species: the effects of sea level rise on coastal habitats. In J.G. Titus, K.E. Anderson, D.R. Cahoon, D.B. Gesch, S.K. Gill, B.T. Gutierrez, E.R. Thieler & S.J. Williams, lead authors. *Coastal Sensitivity to Sea Level Rise: A Focus on the Mid-Atlantic Region*. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.
- Simenstad, C.A. & Thom, R.M. 1996. Functional equivalency trajectories of the restored Gog-Le-Hi-Te estuarine wetland. *Ecological Applications* 6: 38-56.
- Smith, S.D., Bunting, S.C. & Hironaka, M. 1986. Sensitivity of frequency plots for detecting vegetation change. *Northwest Science* 60: 279-286.
- Smith, S.D., Bunting, S.C. & Hironaka, M. 1987. Evaluation of the improvement in sensitivity of nested frequency plots to vegetation change by summation. *Great Basin Naturalist* 47: 299-307.
- South Atlantic Fishery Management Council. Ecosystem Glossary. Retrieved December 17, 2008, from, <http://www.safmc.net/Home/EcosystemGlossary/tabid/69/Default.aspx> (portions excerpted from the Ecosystem Management Report to MAFAC, May 2003 and the Ecosystem-Based Fishery Management – A Report to Congress by the Ecosystem Principles Advisory Panel, April 1999).
- Stedman, S.M. 2003. *An Introduction and User's Guide to Wetland Restoration, Creation, and Enhancement*, NOAA, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and the National Resource Conservation Service.
- Steyer, G.D. & Llewellyn, D.W. 2000. CWPPRA: A programmatic application of adaptive management. *Ecological Engineering* 15: 385-395.
- Steyer, G.D., Sasser, C.E., Visser, J.M., Swenson, E.M., Nyman, J.A. & Raynie, R.C. 2003. A proposed coast-wide reference monitoring system for evaluating wetland restoration trajectories in Louisiana. *Environmental Monitoring and Assessment* 81: 107-117.
- Swamy, V., Fell, P.E., Body, M., Keaney, M.B., Nyaku, M.K., Melvain, E.C. & Keen, A.L. 2002. Macroinvertebrate and fish populations in a restored impounded salt marsh 21 years after the re-establishment of tidal flooding. *Environmental Management* 29(4): 516-530.
- Thayer, G.W., McTigue, T.A., Bellmer, R.J., Burrows, F.M., Merkey, D.H., Nickens, A.D., Lozano, S.J., Gayaldo, P.F., Polmateer, P.J. & Pinit, P.T. 2003. *Science-based restoration monitoring of coastal habitats. Volume 1: A Framework for monitoring plans under the Estuaries and Clean Waters Act of 2000 (Public Law 160-457)*. NOAA, National Ocean Service and National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science. p. 91.
- Thayer, G.W., McTigue, T.A., Salz, R.J., Merkey, D.H., Burrows, F.M. & Gayaldo, P.F. 2005. *Science-based restoration monitoring of coastal habitats, Volume Two: Tools for monitoring coastal habitats. Silver Spring, MD*. NOAA, National Centers for Coastal Ocean Science and Center for Sponsored Coastal Ocean Research. National Coastal Ocean Program Decision Analysis Series, 23 (Volume 2).
- Thom, R.M. 2000. Adaptive management of coastal ecosystem restoration projects. *Ecological Engineering* 15: 365-372.
- Thom, R.M., Zeigler, R. & Borde, A.B. 2002. Floristic development patterns in a restored Elk River estuarine marsh, Grays Harbor, Washington. *Restoration Ecology* 10 (3): 487-496.
- Thom, R.M., Williams, G., Borde, A., Southard, J., Sargeant, S., Woodruff, D., Laufle, J. & Glasoe, S. 2005. Adaptively addressing uncertainty in estuarine and near coastal restoration projects. *Journal of Coastal Research*, 94-108.
- Thom, R.M., Williams, G.W. & Diefenderfer, H.L. 2005. Balancing the need to develop coastal areas with the desire for an ecologically functioning coastal environment: Is net ecosystem improvement possible? *Restoration Ecology* 13(1): 193-203.
- Titus, J.G. & Narayanan, V.K. 1995. *The probability of sea level rise*. EPA 230-R-95-008, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.
- Trenberth, K.E., Jones, P.D., Ambenje, P., Bojarlou, R., Easterling, D., Klein Tank, A., Parker, D., Rahlmzadeh, F., Renwick, J.A., Rusticucci, M., Soden, B. & Zhai, P. 2007. Observations: Surface and atmospheric climate change. In S. Solomon, D. Qin, M. Manning, Z. Chen, M. Marquis, K.B. Averyt, M. Tignor & H.L. Miller, (Eds.) *Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis*. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge, United Kingdom and New York, NY, USA: Cambridge University Press.
- Turner, R.E. & Lewis, R.R. 1997. Hydrologic restoration of coastal wetlands. Special Issue: Hydrologic Restoration of Coastal Wetlands. *Wetlands Ecology and Management* 4(2) 65-72.
- U.S. Climate Change Science Program. 2009. *Coastal Sensitivity to Sea-Level Rise: A Focus on the Mid-Atlantic Region*. U.S. Climate Change Science Program, Synthesis and Assessment Product 4.1, Final Report. [J.G. Titus, K.E. Anderson, D.R. Cahoon, D.B. Gesch, S.K. Gill, B.T. Gutierrez, E.R. Thieler & S.J. Williams], U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.
- Walters, C.J. 1986. *Adaptive Management of Renewable Resources*, New York, NY: McGrawHill.

- Warren, R.S., Fell, P.E., Rozsa, R., Hunter Brawley, A. H., Orsted, A.C., Olson, E.T., Swamy, V. & Niering, W.A. 2002. Salt marsh restoration in Connecticut: 20 years of science and management. *Restoration Ecology* 10: 497-513.
- Watson, I. & Novelty, P. 2004. Monitoring sustainability with a monitoring system that is itself sustainable: Addressing the cause and the symptoms. *Austral Ecology* 29(1): 16-30.
- Weinstein, M.P. & Kreeger, D.A. (Eds.) 2000. *Concepts and Controversies in Tidal Marsh Ecology*. pp. 875. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht.
- Weinstein M.P., Balletto, J.H., Teal, J.M., & Ludwig, D.F. 2005. Success criteria and adaptive management for large-scale wetland restoration project. *Wetlands Ecology and Management* 4(2): 111-127.
- Wilber, P., Thayer, G., Croom, M. & Mayer, G. 2000. Goal setting and success criteria for coastal habitat restoration. *Ecological Engineering* 15 (3-4 Special Issue): 165-405.
- Williams, P.B. & Orr, M.K. 2002. Physical evolution of restored breached levee salt marshes in the San Francisco Bay estuary. *Restoration Ecology* 10(3): 527-542.
- Williams, P.B., Orr, M.K. & Garrity, N.J. 2002. Hydraulic geometry: A geomorphic design tool for tidal marsh channel evolution in wetland restoration projects. *Restoration Ecology* 10(3): 577-590.
- Williams, S.L. & Heck, K.L., Jr. 2001. Seagrass community ecology. In M.D. Bertness, S.D. Gaines & M. Hay, (Eds.) *Marine Community Ecology*. pp. 317-337. Massachusetts: Sinauer Associates.
- Zedler, J.B. 1996. *Tidal Wetland Restoration: A Scientific Perspective and Southern California Focus*. Report No. T-038 of the California Sea Grant College System, University of California, La Jolla, CA.
- Zedler, J.B. Editor. 2001. *Handbook for Restoring Tidal Wetlands*. Boca Raton, FL: RC Press.
- Zedler, J.B. & Calloway, J.C. 1999. Tracking wetland restoration: Do mitigation sites follow desired trajectories? *Restoration Ecology* 7(1): 69-73.
- Zedler, J.B., Bonin, C.L., Larkin, D.J. & Varty, A. 2008. Salt marshes. In S.E. Jorgensen, & B.D. Fath, (Eds.) *Encyclopedia of Ecology 1st Edition*. Elsevier BV, Oxford. pp. 3132-3141.
- Zeff, M.L. 1999. Salt marsh tidal channel morphometry: Applications for wetland creation and restoration. *Restoration Ecology* 7: 205-211.
- Zimmerman, R., Minello, T.J., Baumer, T. & Castiglione, M. 1989. Oyster Reef as Habitat for Estuarine Macrofauna. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SEFC-249.



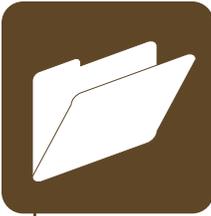
# Project Portfolios



1. Eden Landing Salt Pond Restoration Project .....	86
2. Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project.....	92
3. Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project.....	98
4. St. Vincent Island Estuarine Habitat Restoration Project .....	104
5. Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project .....	110
6. Newman Branch Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project.....	116
7. Don Pedro Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project.....	122
8. Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project .....	128
9. Tarpon Bay Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project .....	134
10. Wildcat Cove Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project .....	140
11. Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project.....	146
12. North River Farms Wetland Restoration Project.....	152
13. Little River Marsh Restoration Project.....	158

---

Providing tidal hydrology restoration project examples, with supporting documentation, from the Southeastern United States and beyond.



# Eden Landing Salt Pond Restoration Project

Hayward, Alameda County, CA



*Dikes and levees built in the mid-1800s for the purposes of commercial salt production are breached to allow for the restoration of tidal marsh.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*





## Background

Beginning in the mid-1800s, the tidal marshes and mudflats of the San Francisco Estuary were filled, diked, or drained for transportation, development, and farming. The bay lands in the South Bay were diked primarily for commercial salt production, and by the 1930s almost half of the South Bay's historical tidal marshes had been converted into salt ponds. The Eden Landing Ecological Reserve (ELER) Restoration Project is located on the eastern shore of San Francisco Bay in the California Department of Fish and Game's ELER. This multi-phase, 835-acre restoration project includes over 700 acres of tidal salt marsh restoration and 125 acres of managed ponds. The ELER Restoration Project was implemented within the context of the 15,100-acre South Bay Salt Ponds Restoration Project (SBSRP). The ELER includes an additional 5,500 acres to be restored as part of that project. This case study focuses on the final phase of the original ELER Restoration Project, accomplished by breaching the last remaining Mt. Eden Creek levee, removing invasive species, and planting native species.

## Outcomes / Status

By June 2006, restoration planning, design, and previous phases of construction were completed. Initial site monitoring was also completed, including pre-project pictures, vegetation transect surveys, and topographic and GPS mapping. In 2008, the project breached one final levee to open approximately 350 acres to tidal influence and restore 10,000 linear feet of emergent wetland. At the same time, two culverts were replaced to improve pond management, invasive species were removed, and native species were planted. Since 2006, the project's partnership with Save the Bay has included community-based restoration activities with corporate, school, and other groups conducting habitat enhancements along

a broad levee to provide wetland-upland transition habitat and jump-start plant establishment. From 2006 to 2009, over 5,000 seedlings were planted to establish native marsh vegetation, seedling growth and sibling groups were studied in native plant nurseries, and invasive plant removal and site mapping continued. Beginning in April 2007, post-project monitoring and vegetation surveys were underway, and site partner meetings were being held to assess success and next steps.

## Lessons Learned

- Tidal restoration of former salt ponds to tidal salt marsh is projected within 5 to 10 years where elevation is suitable for plant establishment; habitat structure and functional development will require longer periods for channel development and sediment accretion.
- Partnerships with local agencies and organizations to fund and implement restoration actions are valuable and increase success.
- Focusing on a suite of species and on creating habitat diversity, rather than focusing on a single species, can improve site management.

## Project Contact

*John Krause, Manager*  
Eden Landing Ecological Reserve  
CA Department of Fish and Game  
415-454-8050



Additional information on this effort can be found online at Save the Bay's Eden Landing project page at <http://www.savesfbay.org/eden-landing>.



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	February 2001 to October 2008
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Dikes and levees were built in the mid-1800s to create commercial salt ponds in areas historically occupied by tidal marsh and tidal flats.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	Most of the site was historically tidal marsh, with broad, well-developed channels, and large tidal marsh pans, including some backshore pans. Seaward of the tidal marsh were large areas of tidal mud flat. The upland boundaries of the marshes were grasslands, including a limited amount of moist grassland capable of supporting seasonal ponds. Historically, Alameda Creek provided a significant zone of brackish tidal marsh. This creek also supported well-developed riparian habitat and a steelhead trout run. Most of the tidal marsh was converted to salt ponds when a majority of the area was diked.
<b>Project Partners</b>	Lead: California Department of Fish and Game, East Bay Regional Park District Others: Save the Bay, USFWS, NOAA
<b>Funding Sources</b>	Wildlife Conservation Board; NOAA Community-based Restoration Program; CA Department of Fish and Game; CA Coastal Conservancy, East Bay Regional Park District; Caltrans; Cities of San Jose, Milpitas, and Fremont; San Francisco Bay Conservation and Development Commission, Association of Bay Area Governments/Bay Trail

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals and Objectives</b>	Goals: Restore and enhance wetland habitat structure and function for migratory birds and threatened and endangered species through native salt marsh vegetation reestablishment and invasive species control, provide for flood management, and provide public access and recreation opportunities
	Objectives: Re-establish native salt marsh vegetation diversity with at least four species by 2007. Reduce flowering and seeding of <i>Lepidium latifolium</i> to at least 30 percent of population by 2008.

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Multiple levee breaches (four primary breaches restored full tidal action; two breaches restored tidal action to major sloughs along their historic alignment, two breaches restored tidal action to the 2, 350-acre tidal basins within the former salt ponds) slope stabilization; invasive species removal and native planting; trail development and operations; flood protection.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	This multi-phased project restored approximately 835 acres of existing salt ponds to both tidal and seasonal wetlands. The first phase included tidal channel reconstruction at the site (the first breach occurred in April 2005 to restore tides to North Creek from Old Alameda Creek, the second breach restored tidal action from North Creek into the tidal basin). The second phase involved levee breaching at the bayfront to reconnect Mt. Eden Creek to the bay, and the final breach upstream which restored full tidal action from Mt. Eden Creek to the tidal basin; the two tidal basins combined are over 700 acres in size. The project also included removal and control of <i>Lepidium latifolium</i> and other invasive species, and planting of native marsh species. The final phase included levee construction (for flood protection and a service road along the Bay Trail), installation of additional drainage structures and slope stabilization measures, and several breaches that ultimately connect tidal waters from the Bay to salt ponds that had been isolated from tidal influences for many years.



## Permitting

### Permits

USACE San Francisco District Section 404 permit; Section 7 consultations with USFWS and NOAA for ESA; California Environmental Quality Act review; Bay Conservation and Development Commission permit; San Francisco Regional Water Quality Control Board Section 401 certification. Specific concerns related to fish and wildlife habitat included: habitat for two federal and state listed endangered species (California clapper rail, salt marsh harvest mouse), the federally listed threatened western snowy plover, and the state listed threatened black rail; nursery and foraging habitat for many species of fish including steelhead trout, starry flounder, and Pacific herring; mudflat habitat used as a source of invertebrate prey by shorebirds; and seasonal wetlands utilized in winter by migrating waterfowl, such as the northern shoveler.

## Construction and Maintenance

### Total Budget

\$3,595,400 for restoration of 835 acres

### Construction Narrative

Constructed channels follow historic channel alignments wherever possible. Culverts were installed as necessary to allow for water passage at the levees to managed ponds and to provide management as needed to address infrastructure constraints. Community volunteers established native vegetation along two miles of Bay Trail with a 10:1 slope along the perimeter bench of the tidal restoration area. This included planting with a native tidal marsh seed mix; installation of vegetated coir mats to reduce erosion and rapidly establish natives; blacktarping specific problem areas to reduce weed infestations through solarization; and planting over 5,000 site-specific native seedlings, 20 percent propagated by volunteers and 80 percent by contract with local nurseries.

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

### Scientific Evaluation

This project has a reference site located in North Bay at China Camp, part of the San Francisco Bay National Estuarine Research Reserve. The restoration parameters to be evaluated include acreage of habitat types, vegetation species composition, percent cover of herbaceous vascular plants, interspersions of habitat types, and seedling survival.

The target value for invasive vegetation is less than or equal to 50 percent cover. The target value for native salt marsh vegetation species composition is four species. The reference values from China Camp State Park include 20 percent invasive species cover and 12 native salt marsh species.

Additional California Department of Fish and Game monitoring activities include Annual Monitoring Reports for 10 years of: waterbird distribution, habitat use, composition, abundance; snowy plover nesting activities (monitor similarly to past/current effort led by USFWS); clapper rail, salt marsh harvest mouse colonization/distribution within restored areas; tidal marsh vegetation establishment; sedimentation rates; tidal channel evolution/development; and tidal prism, extent of tidal inundation

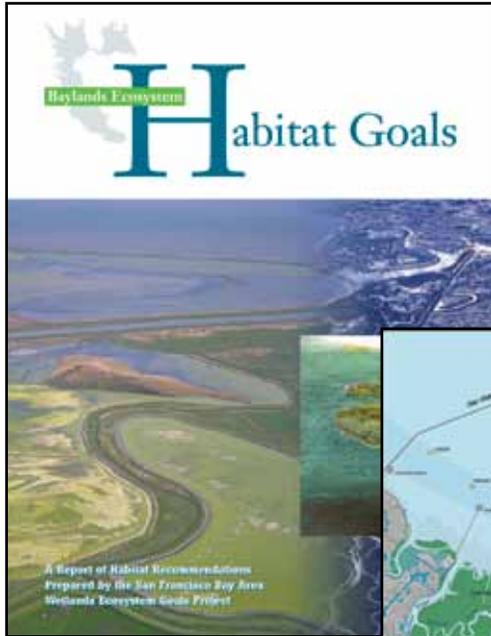
## Community Involvement

### Volunteer Components

Save the Bay provided most of the volunteer opportunities for this project, including invasive species and trash removal pre-breach, and planting native vegetation along the perimeter of the newly restored tidal fringe.

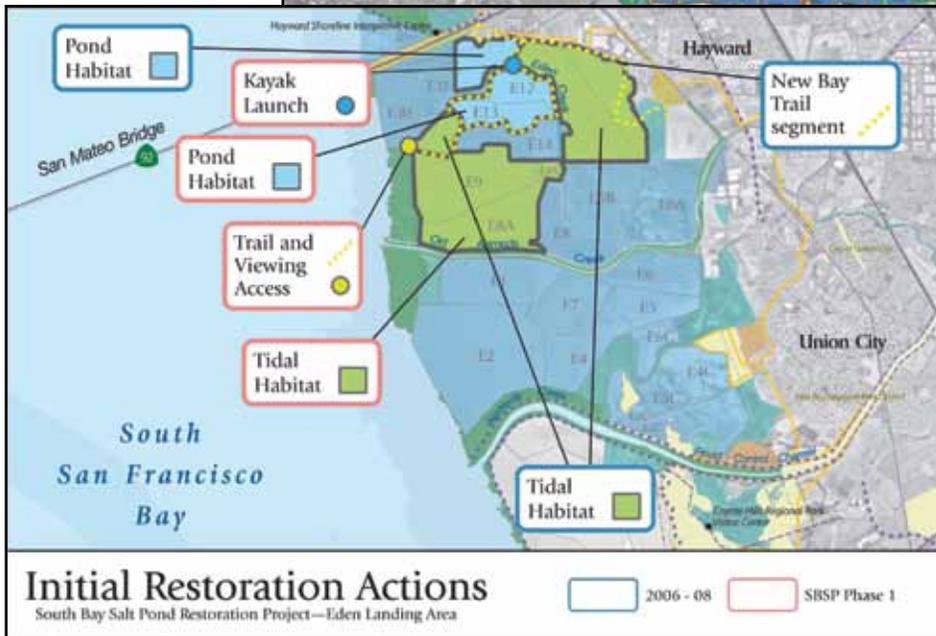
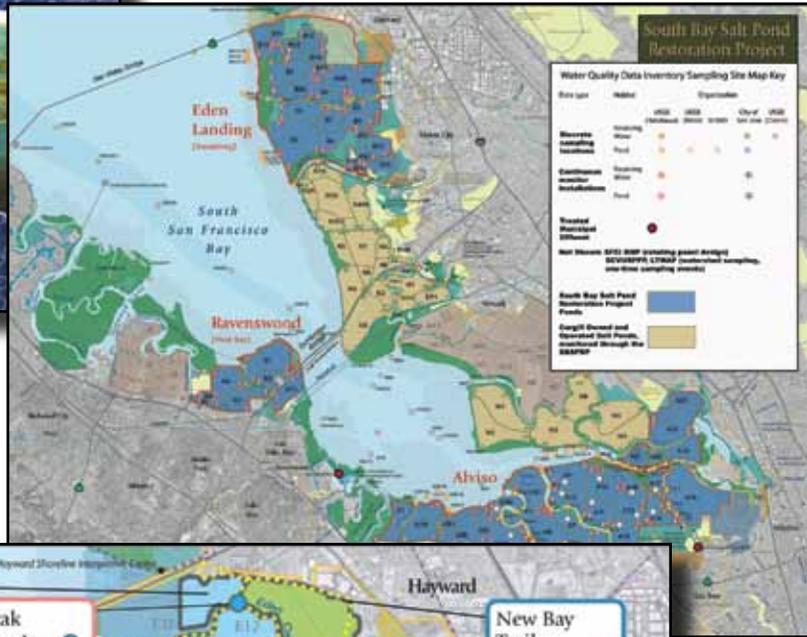
### Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach

Outreach for the overall South Bay Salt Ponds Restoration Project is extensive. Stakeholders have been able to participate in many workshops and meetings. For Eden Landing, Save the Bay plans to lead 25 individual volunteer projects with local students and community residents to educate and provide volunteer opportunities.

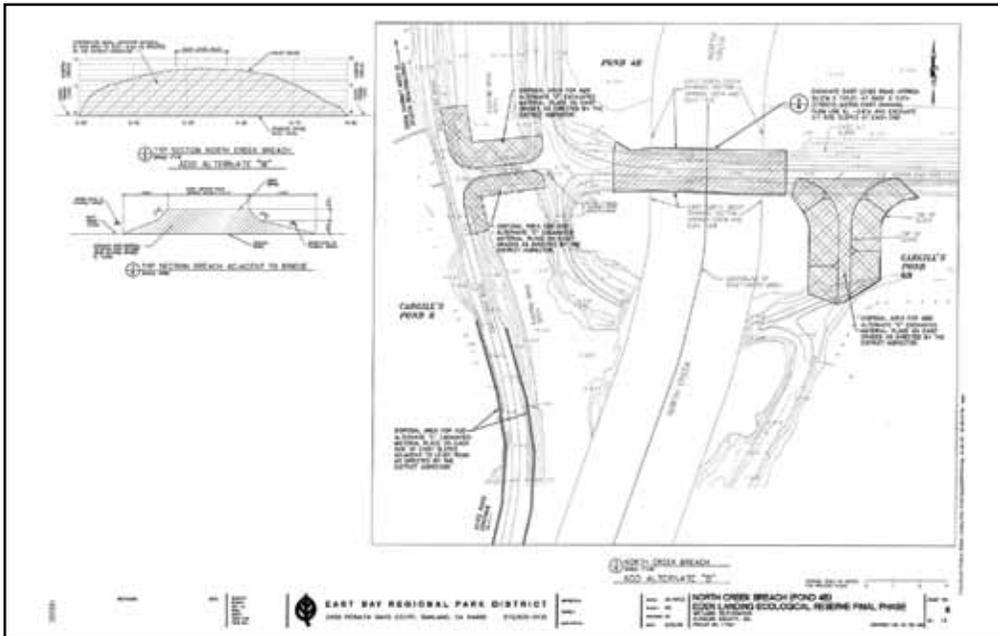


**1 Baylands Ecosystem Habitat Goals**

**2 South San Francisco Bay Salt Pond Restoration Overview Map**



**3 South San Francisco Bay Salt Pond Restoration**  
*Map of Initial Restoration Actions in the Eden Landing Area*



#### 4 Eden Landing Design Plans

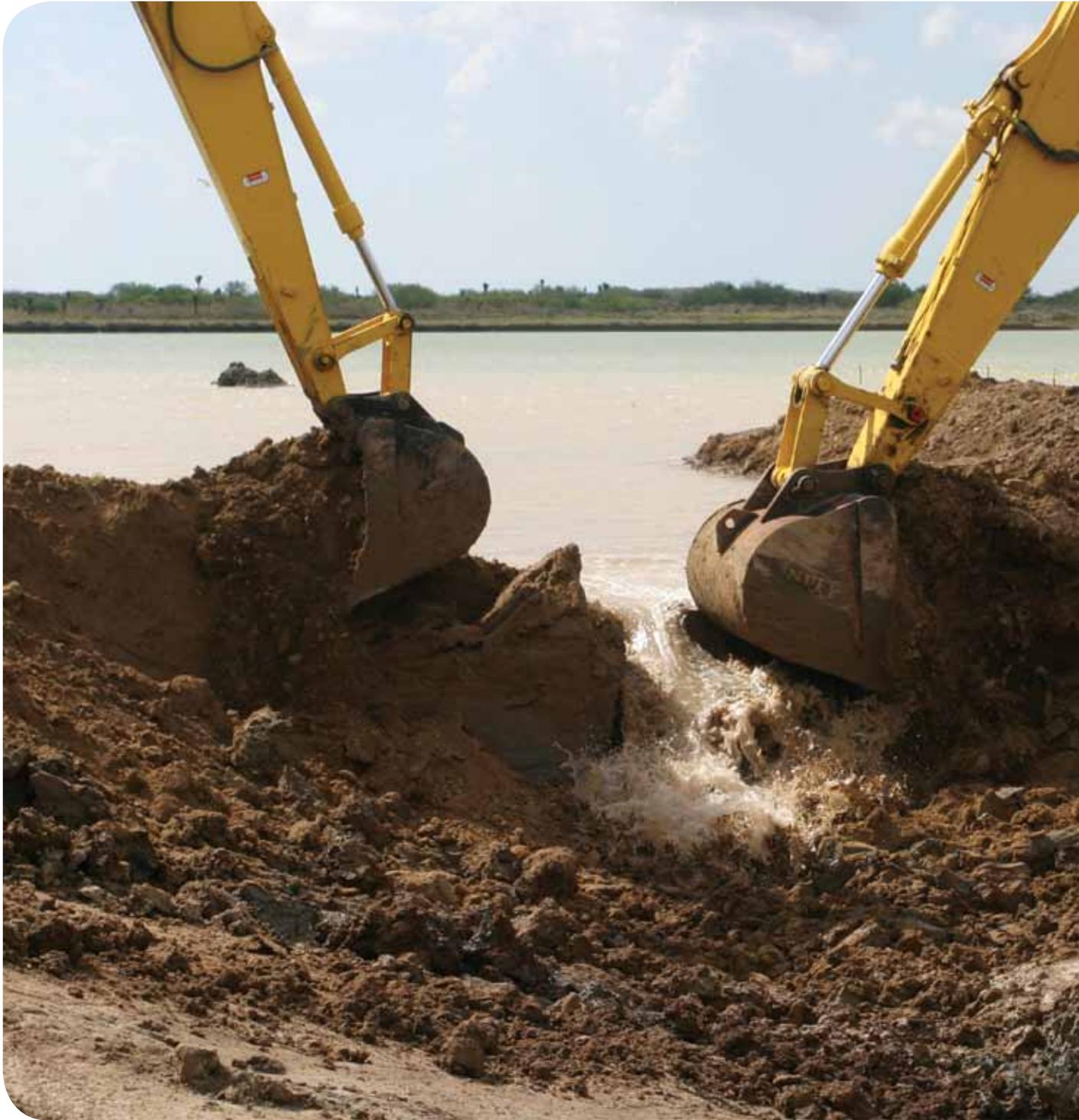


These Eden Landing case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-edenlanding.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-edenlanding.zip).



# Bahia Grande Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Bahia Grande, Cameron County, TX*





## Background

The Bahia Grande is an 11,000-acre complex consisting of three basins between Brownsville and Port Isabel in Cameron County, TX. Originally a highly productive shallow estuarine water system, tidal flow was cut off in the 1930s by massive spoil banks left over from the dredging of the Brownsville ship channel. The basins dried up, converted to salty sand flats, and its drifting sands caused numerous health and industrial problems for nearby communities.

## Outcomes / Status

In 2005 restoration of the Bahia Grande system began with the construction of a 2,400-foot-long, 60-foot-wide pilot channel that returned tidal flow after a 70-year absence. Future plans call for widening this channel to 210 feet. In addition to this main channel, other channels were constructed to connect Bahia Grande to both the Laguna Larga basin and the Little Laguna Madre basin. Ultimately, over 11,000 acres of estuarine habitat will be restored, making this one of the largest wetland restoration projects in U.S. history.

## Lessons Learned

- An environmental assessment was used to translate the outcomes of different design scenarios determined by the hydrologic modeling.
- Other channels have been proposed, but due to budgetary limitations and permitting challenges, they have not been constructed to date.
- The satisfaction of community objectives relating to impacts from windblown sand provided tremendous support and enabled the project to be implemented in a short time frame.



For more information, visit the Bahia Grande project website at [http://www.fws.gov/southwest/refuges/texas/STRC/laguna/Bahia%20Grande\\_Laguna.html](http://www.fws.gov/southwest/refuges/texas/STRC/laguna/Bahia%20Grande_Laguna.html).

## Project Contact

*Refuge Manager*  
Laguna Atascosa Wildlife Refuge  
956-748-3607

*In 2005, a pilot channel was opened between the Brownsville Ship Channel and the Bahia Grande, reconnecting permanent tidal flow to the area for the first time in 70 years.*

Photo Credit: NOAA



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	January 2003 to July 2005
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Spoils banks were deposited from the dredging of the Brownsville Shipping channel. These banks impounded Bahia Grande, cutting off tidal flow.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	11,000 acres of tidally influenced estuary were lost as the area converted to a dry basin. The biological productivity of this system drastically declined as wildlife, including abundant wildfowl and floral assemblages were lost.
<b>Project Partners</b>	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, National Fisheries Institute, The Ocean Trust, NOAA's Community-based Restoration Program, Gulf of Mexico Foundation
<b>Funding Sources</b>	National Fisheries Institute, The Ocean Trust, NOAA, Gulf of Mexico Foundation, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals</b>	Reintroduce tidal flow throughout the system, reestablish salt marsh vegetation, allow fisheries access, and reduce windblown sediments.
--------------	--

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Channel construction, mangrove and salt marsh revegetation
<b>Design Narrative</b>	To help create the most efficient design, a hydrologic modeling study was conducted that examined the effects of channel design and wind effects on water flow, circulation, and the mixing needed to achieve biological productivity goals. Individual and multiple breaches and channels at different locations were analyzed. The final design involved construction of a 2,400-foot-long main channel connecting Bahia Grande to the source of tidal waters, and construction of three additional channels, one to connect Bahia Grande to Laguna Larga basin (1,669 acres) and Little Laguna Madre basin (1,411 acres) and a 5,000-foot-long channel to enhance circulation between the two basins. The main channel was designed so that prevailing winds from the southeast facilitate maximum tidal inundation of the basin.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Nationwide Permit 27. There were no ESA or NEPA delays, although the project required an individual Environmental Assessment due to archaeological issues.
----------------	---

## PConstruction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$1,700,000
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Construction was fairly simplistic. Large excavators and bulldozers were used to remove dredge spoils and cut the channel. Coordination with ongoing road work in the vicinity resulted in significant cost savings; the excavated material from the channel was used as fill material to grade the new road bed, resulting in significant savings.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Channel depth and width.



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

### Scientific Evaluation

Extensive evaluation and monitoring are being undertaken by a consortium of investigators from universities throughout south Texas. Monitored parameters include sediment geology and chemistry, water quality, bird communities. Estuarine monitoring includes benthic, epi-benthic, and nekton communities.

## Community Involvement

### Volunteer Components

Cultivation and planting of vegetation by volunteers was a large aspect of this project. Significant funding was generated to build extensive native plant nurseries.

### Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach

With the need to control the health and infrastructural impacts caused by wind blown sand from the Bahia Grande, a multitude of community groups joined with natural resource interests to offer strong support of the project. In all, a coalition of over 60 participating entities (county government, port, university, local landowners, etc.) came together to make the project a reality. Without this significant backing, the project would not have progressed as rapidly as it did.



*The reintroduction of tidal flow to the Bahia Grande enabled the restoration of an 11,000-acre estuary and alleviated the negative effects of windblown sands on the local community.*

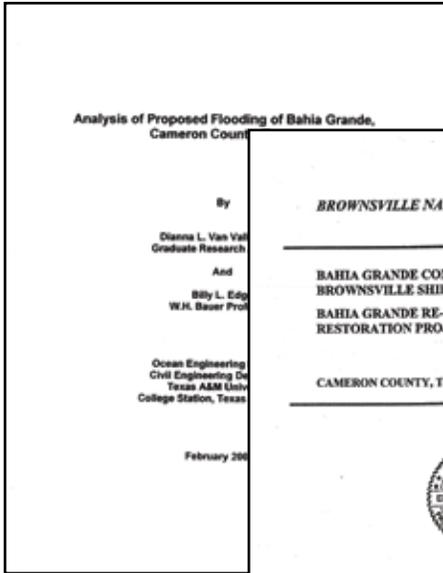
Photo Credit: NOAA



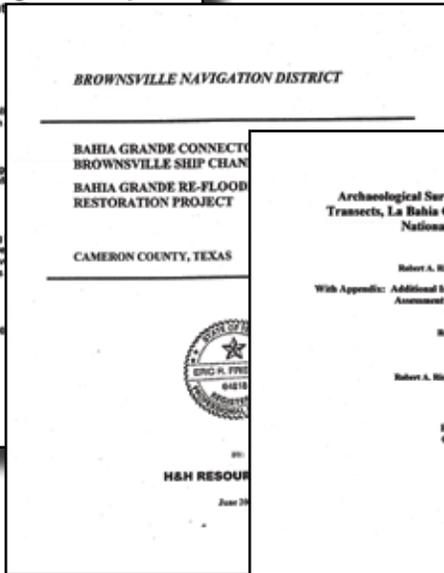


# Additional Bahia Grande Restoration Documents Available Online

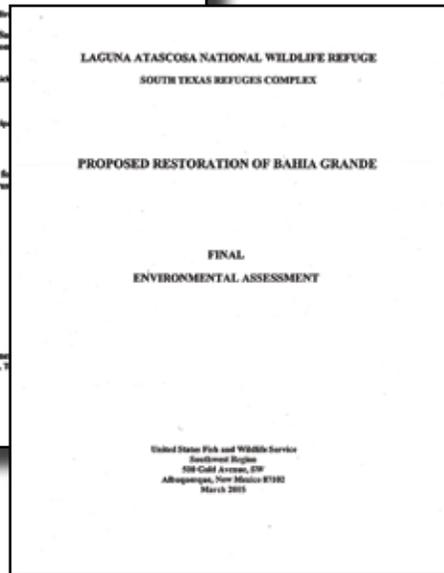
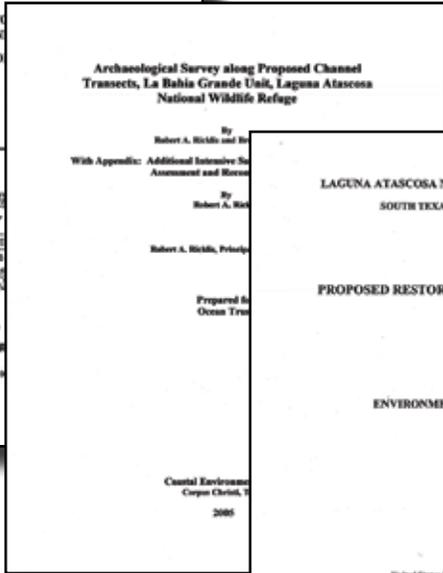
## 1 Analysis of Proposed Flooding of Bahia Grande



## 2 Bahia Grande Restoration Hydraulic Analysis



## 3 Archaeological Survey

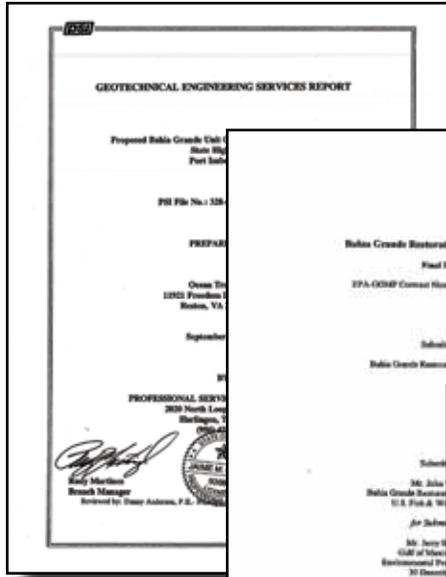


## 4 Final Environmental Assessment

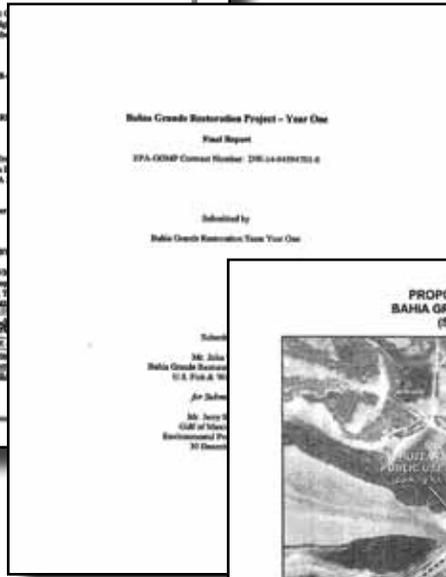


## 5 Solicitation for Public Input

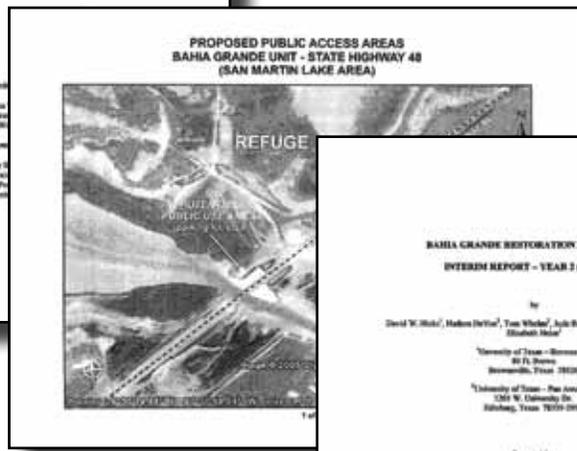
## 6 Construction Specifications for Tidal Exchange Channels



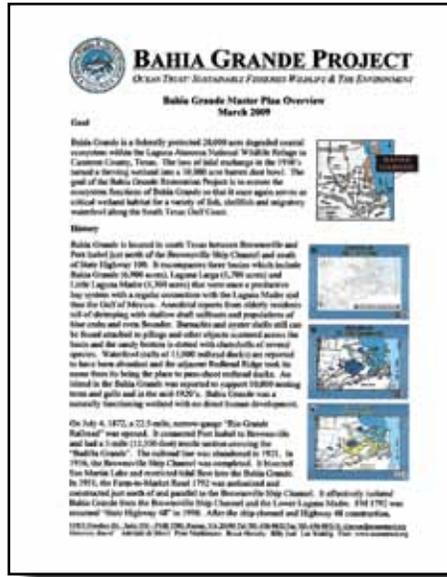
**7 Geotechnical Engineering Services Report**



**8 Bahia Grande Restoration Project Year 1 Final Report**



**9 Proposed Public Access**



**10 Interim Monitoring Report**

**11 Master Plan Overview**



These Bahia Grande case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-bahiagrande.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-bahiagrande.zip).



# Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Yscloskey, St. Bernard Parish, LA*



*A failed 1950s water control structure in the canal negatively affected more than 3,800 acres of marsh habitat impounded by levee and road construction.*

*Photo Credit: CWPPRA*



## Background

In the 1950s a water control structure was installed on the canal that connects the interior Hopedale project area to Bayou La Loutre. The project area is an impoundment created through road and levee development. Over time, the culverts degraded, prevented the drainage of high tides and stormwater runoff, resulting in impounded water on the marsh and restricted fish passage, and negatively impacting 3,805 acres.

## Outcomes / Status

A new control structure was installed with three flap gates. Hydrology data is being collected and flow seems to be restored. The project team is still waiting for marsh function data, but anecdotally the marsh looks more robust.

## Lessons Learned

- Be prepared to encounter traditional problems, such as indecisiveness of landowners and inclement weather (in this case, a storm event required equipment to be moved offsite and it was a constant battle to dewater the site due to high water table).
- Develop a clear Statement of Work. If you are not specific in the SOW, the contractor may not provide exactly what you require.
- Make sure your project is adequately funded up-front so you do not run short on funds.
- Have clear goals and objectives, they are important in determining project design.

## Project Contact

Rachel Sweeney  
NOAA Habitat Protection  
rachel.sweeney@noaa.gov  
225-389-0508 ext. 206



Visit the State of Louisiana's Hopedale Hydrologic Restoration Project website at <http://dnr.louisiana.gov/crm/coastres/project.asp?id=PO-24>.



*A new water control structure, consisting of three flap gates and two fish gates, was installed to restore a healthy hydroperiod and to allow for fish passage.*

Photo Credit: CWPPRA



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	January 2004 to January 2005
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Historic levee and road impoundment degraded more than 3,000 acres of interior wetland. A water control structure built in the 1950s to remedy the impacted wetlands failed, thus re-creating the impoundment.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	This area was once an intermediate to brackish marsh with open tidal exchange. Levees and roads were built that resulted in an impounded system subject to anoxic conditions and excessive water levels. As a result, there was increased interior wetland loss and stressed vegetation. A set of three culverts were installed in the 1950s to open exchange but they have since failed, reverting the area back to an impoundment with no fisheries access.
<b>Project Partners</b>	Lead: Louisiana Department of Natural Resources Others: NOAA National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), St. Bernard Parish
<b>Funding Sources</b>	NOAA Coastal Wetlands Planning, Protection, and Restoration Act (CWPPRA) Program

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals and Objectives</b>	Re-establish tidal exchange and relieve impoundment conditions; achieve healthy hydro-period: reduce periods of high water to levels found in reference marshes/high water to stand on marsh for no longer than one week; provide fisheries access.
-----------------------------	---

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Install a water control structure with three flap gates and two fish gates. The design was based on water level data collected inside and outside of existing structure and topographic and bathymetric surveys used in the hydrodynamic model (USEPA's SWIM model).
<b>Design Narrative</b>	The site had relatively simple hydrology with just a few water inflows and outflows. The design was set to achieve specific targets: high water to stand on the marsh for no longer than one week; structure openings were to allow for somewhat of a tidal signal (under normal conditions); a model was used to evaluate different sizes of openings and different operational strategies. The resulting design called for one water control structure consisting of three flap gates (an 84-inch diameter culvert with a flap door: when the water level is higher inside than outside, it will drain; when the water level is higher on the outside, it will remain closed) and two fish gates (tall thin slots in the structure of two feet wide by seven feet tall; under normal conditions they remain open, but they can be closed during tropical events). The goal was to minimize operational scenario: the only time for operation (i.e., closing of flap gates) is if a storm approaches, then all of the control structures are closed. If there is a significant event causing high water levels, all of the gates can be fully opened. If the water level gets too low inside, there is an option to close the fish access gates. Sea level rise was factored into the modeling in terms of projecting water levels in the future.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	USACE Section 404; State Coastal Use Permit
----------------	---



## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$2,280,000, including \$620,000 for construction, does not include construction oversight. Additional engineering design and administration: \$330,000 to \$400,000 total, and federal and state supervision and management.
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Over nine months of construction, the project removed three existing corrugated metal pipes and rock structures located within Hopedale Canal and replaced them with a sheet and pipe pile gated structure, along with associated walkways and riprap protection. The site required construction of temporary cofferdams for dewatering the existing canal during construction. The Hopedale control structure consists of a sheet and pipe pile wall, which spans the channel and extends past both banks with an overall length of 137.9 feet. The top of cap plate elevation is set at +8 feet NAVD 88. The structure has three Whipps combination gates and two Whipps fish gates installed with the invert elevation at -7 feet NAVD 88. The biggest issue with site construction has been low water in the winter. The pilings are 80 feet below ground and are designed to last 20 years.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Datasonds are deployed in the project area and reference area. They record water level and salinity data. These continuous data recorders uplink water levels to an online system. They trigger a call to a pager if certain operational procedures (water levels) are met. (So far only had to operate for Hurricane Katrina.) There is maintenance and rehabilitation planned for the control structure but no replacement planned.

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

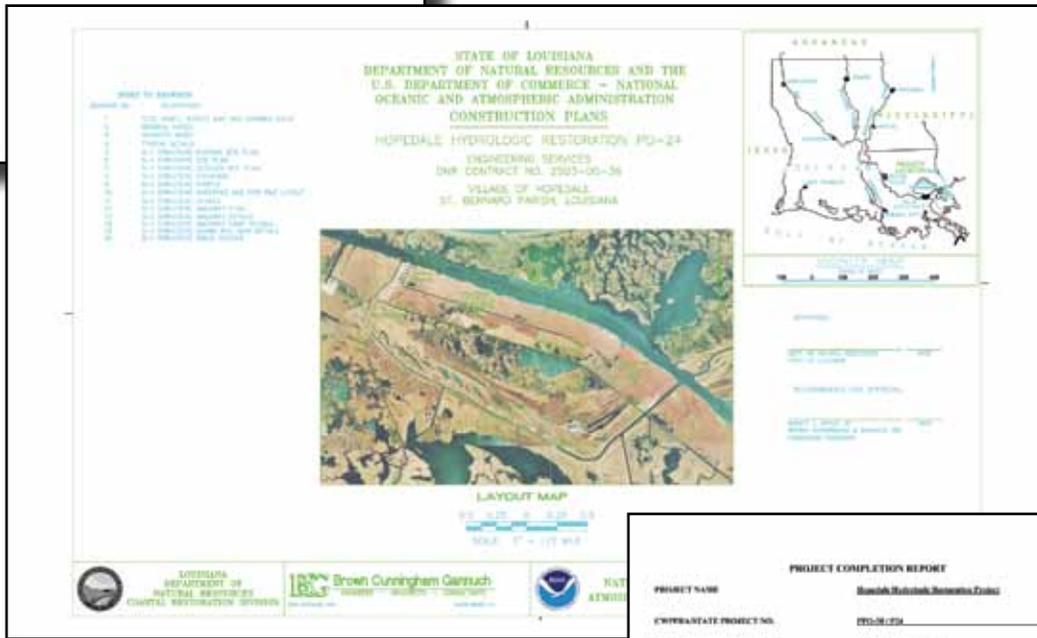
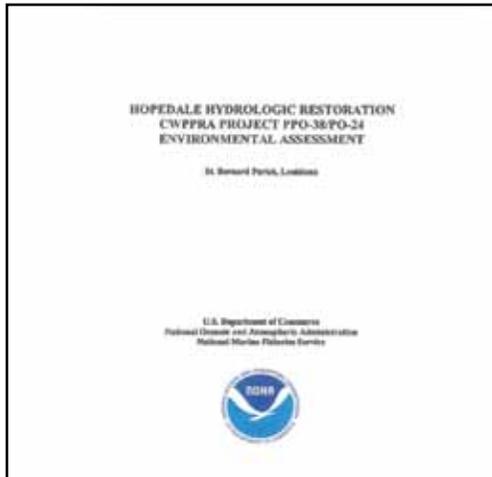
<b>Monitoring Budget</b>	\$500,000 (budgeted \$300,000 for long-term monitoring and maintenance for 20 years, but due to post storm events, data acquisition, rehabilitation event at year 10, and annual cleaning, will cost closer to \$500,000).
<b>Scientific Evaluation</b>	Monitoring water level and marsh response through aerial photography analysis (pre-construction and planning for 10 and 20 years post); salinity (no significant effect on salinity yet); water level analysis (compare annually inside and outside at different stations, so far it is successful); some vegetation monitoring (using transects to assess percent cover and species composition).

## Community Involvement

<b>Volunteer Components</b>	None
<b>Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach</b>	This project was subject to requirements of CWPPRA and proposed by the landowner and local government who had seen significant land loss in the area. The process included creating project-specific fact sheets, a dedication ceremony, and a project website.



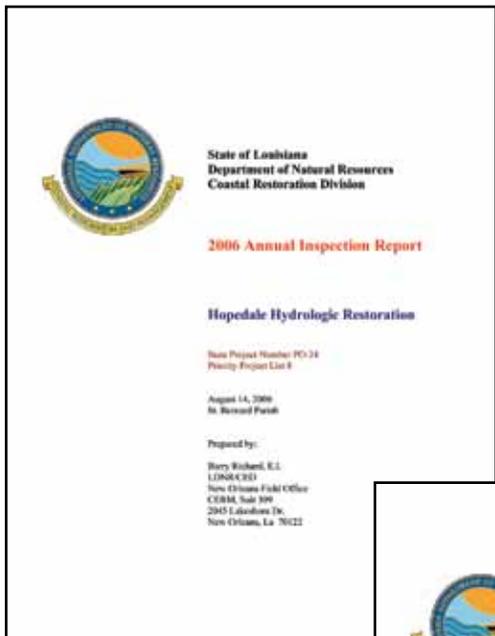
## 1 Hopedale Hydrologic Restoration Environmental Assessment



## 2 Project Construction Plans As-Built Drawings



## Hopedale Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Completion Report 3



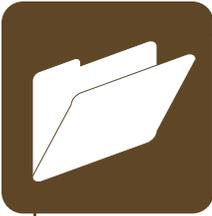
#### 4 Annual Inspection Report *Post Katrina*



#### 5 2006 Operations, Maintenance, and Monitoring Report



These Hopedale case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-hopedale.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-hopedale.zip).



# St. Vincent Island Estuarine Habitat Restoration Project

*St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge, Franklin County, FL*



*Historic construction of multiple roads resulted in blockage of tidal hydrology and fish access to more than 2,300 acres of estuarine marsh.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



## Background

St. Vincent Island National Wildlife Refuge is a 12,490-acre barrier island on the western end of Apalachicola Bay, Florida, in the Gulf of Mexico. Prior to Refuge establishment, road construction and other anthropogenic modifications severely altered the natural hydrology of freshwater, brackish, and intermediate wetlands on the island. In 2000, the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) completed a map report that identified restoration options to accomplish surface water hydrologic habitat improvements. The USGS specifically identified the potential for removal of 45 miles of roads on the island. This project aimed to restore one section of the island (2,389 acres total, approximately 1,925 acres of estuarine wetland) by improving the hydrologic connection between the estuarine marshes, freshwater marshes, and the Gulf of Mexico.

## Outcomes / Status

Construction activities included installation and replacement of culverts and removal of the road bed by scraping down overburden and filling adjacent ditches. Water is now flowing through the culverts, connecting the marsh on either side, and fish have been seen moving across the previously existing road bed. In addition, marsh vegetation is growing over the re-graded "roads." Eventually, these road beds will disappear into the marsh.



Additional project information can be found online at the St. Vincent project website at <http://www.fws.gov/saintvincent/>.

## Lessons Learned

- The logistics associated with moving supplies to "a very primitive site with equipment that is already worn out" was the biggest lesson learned for this project (Monica Harris, Refuge Manager). All supplies had to come from the mainland, creating a logistical hassle. Only equipment that met certain weight requirements (due to barge restrictions) could reach the island and thus be used for the project.
- Consider creative ways to rely on volunteers in the face of budget and staff cuts.
- Working in a soft environment is difficult. Even a seemingly simple task like installing the silt fence was complicated in the soft marsh conditions.
- Simple plans do not necessarily mean simple execution. Plans for the project were great on paper but could not necessarily be executed the same way.
- Flexibility is critical, especially when plans change. For example, the dump truck was not adequate to move dirt (the number of loads would have been unmanageable), so the team had to rely on scraping and pushing the dirt instead.

## Project Contact

*Refuge Manager*  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
850-653-8808



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	August 2007 to June 2008
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Several roadbeds were constructed through estuarine marsh using fill material borrowed from marsh adjacent to road, creating ditches.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	Road construction and other modifications resulted in blockage of tidal hydrology and fisheries access through the 2,389-acre freshwater and estuarine marsh system.
<b>Project Partners</b>	Lead: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  Others: NOAA Restoration Center, Supporters of St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge, Inc., Franklin County Workcamp, Apalachicola National Estuarine Research Reserve, St. Vincent Island Shuttles, Apalachicola National Forest
<b>Funding Sources</b>	NOAA Community-based Restoration Program; Fish America Foundation

## PGoals and Objectives

<b>Goals</b>	Re-establish hydrologic flow and connectivity by removing and breaching berm roads. Restore hydrologic connectivity of approximately 1,900 acres of estuarine marsh and 2,389 total wetland acres by scraping down berm roads and installing low water crossings and culverts.
--------------	--

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Scrape-down and removal of road berms and dikes; culvert replacement and new placement; low water crossing installation using oyster shell on remaining road.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	Restoration activities included scrape-down and/or removal of three existing north-south roads across the marsh. Two access roads were remained as required for Refuge management. On one, a small failing culvert was replaced with two aluminum 36-inch culverts. On the second, four large low water crossings were established (each 60 to 80 feet long and covered with oyster shells) and one culvert was replaced to allow for sheet flow of water.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	Internal (USFWS) Section 7 consultation made the process relatively easy; Northwest Florida Water Management District; Franklin County permit.
----------------	--

## PConstruction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$92,407
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Construction at this site presented several challenges. The remote location required creative thinking and logistical planning to move shells and equipment. The original plan to move dirt from the road to the borrow pits by dump truck was impractical due to the volume of dirt and number of trips required. Instead, bulldozers and backhoes were used to push and scoop the dirt. Working in saltwater made it difficult to rent equipment due to fears of degrading the equipment. Several staff left the project before completion, so volunteer labor had to be organized and trained to run appropriate equipment.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Monitored water flow through culverts; monitored elevations of culverts and low water crossings.



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

### Scientific Evaluation

Collected photo points (before and after); measured water flow through culvert; monitored marsh vegetation; and conducted bird survey (research and monitoring); local school did baseline fishery survey in 2004 (before), which will allow for a follow-up survey (after).

## Community Involvement

### Volunteer Components

Volunteers were involved in all aspects of the project including grant management, fieldwork, and monitoring. Volunteers coordinated and administered the grant as well as installed and removed a silt fence, picked up supplies, assisted in culvert installation, and removed soil from roads. Volunteers were trained and certified to use heavy equipment. Volunteers also helped with project outreach and education.

### Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach

Engaged Friends of St. Vincent group in planning and implementation; conducted some meetings with recreational hunters who were concerned about losing access to parts of the island as a result of road closures. Several schools from Alabama and Florida visited the site to receive education about the project and the whole island. Forgotten Coast Television visited the site with the Friends of St. Vincent, and created a replaying feature on the tourist channel. Other outreach included articles in local papers, a poster in the NWR visitor center, and an open house event, including visits to the island and tours describing the hydrology project.



*A combination of road removal, low water crossings and culvert placement (pictured here) was used to restore tidal connection previously severed through road construction.*

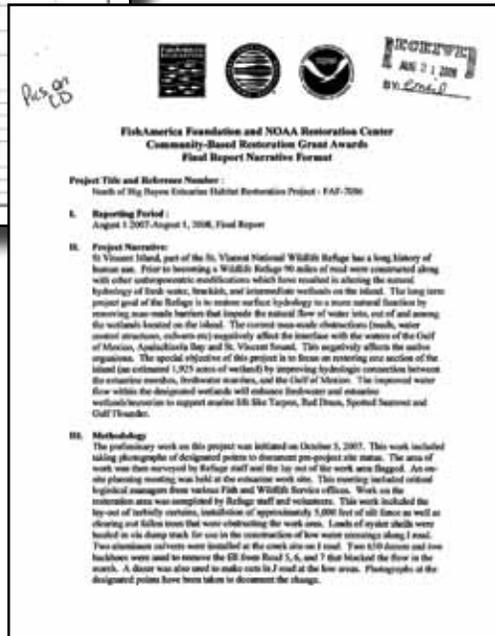
*Photo Credit: NOAA*



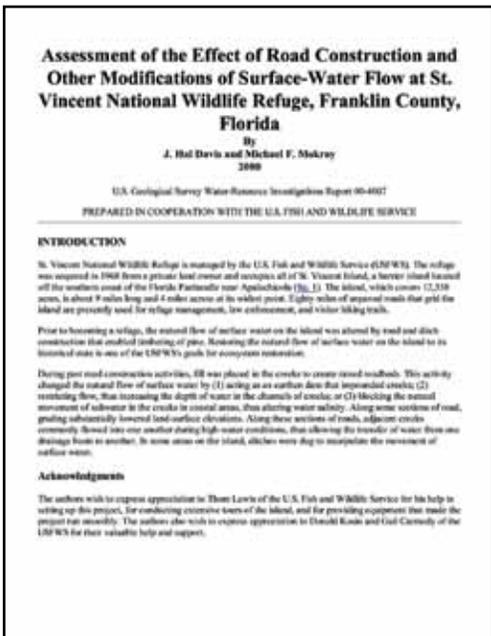
# Additional St. Vincent Island Restoration Documents Available Online

## 1 Line Item Costs

St. Vincent Island Material cost for on ground work											
Date	Description	Cost	FAF	USFWS	Supporters of St. Vincent	St. Vincent Island Studies	Franklin County Work Camp	Florida Schools	Alabama Schools	Apalachicola National Forest	ANERR
10/03/08	Aze - Hammered gloves	\$57.61	\$57.61								
11/03/08	Gulf Atlantic Culvert Company - 2-14 gauge AL 36x24	\$1,666.56		\$1,666.56							
01/15/2008	Grig Tires Per Diem - 5days	\$50.00		\$50.00							
01/15/2008	Willie Lindsey - Per Diem - 4days	\$70.00		\$70.00							
01/15/2008	Dale Shiver - Per Diem - 4days	\$70.00		\$70.00							
01/15/2008	Barb Rye - Per Diem - 5days	\$90.00		\$90.00							
01/15/2008	Auto Service Station - tire repair	\$280.95		\$280.95							
10/19/08	Dump Truck repair	\$32.61		\$32.61							
06/20/08	Dump Truck repair	\$326.55		\$326.55							
01/15/2008	Fuel Delivery (supporters paid)	\$4,484.62		\$4,484.62							
	Geo bottle 160/2 203 per set x 2 (83 per set)	\$768.00		\$768.00							
	Fabric staples 1 box (ES paid for)	\$27.00		\$27.00							
	Staff Labor reg	\$18,425.53		\$18,425.53							
	Staff Labor OT	\$2,388.50		\$2,388.50							
	Volunteer labor	\$14,588.00			\$14,588.00						
	DOC Labor	\$3,315.00					\$3,315.00				
01/20/08	Mt. Brook program	\$12,326.00							\$12,326.00		
	St. Vincent Island Shuttles	\$125.00				\$120.00					
	Turbidity curblite 3 new 200.07 per vol (ES paid for)	\$585.34		\$585.34							
	ANERR allowed use of Dump truck 4 days (3/20-23)	\$300.00									
01/20/08 & 02/20/08	Florida Schools (HS HS, Farm Creek)	\$785.30						\$785.30			
	Volunteer travel (Supporters 31 hrs, DOC 2 hrs, ANERR 3 hrs x 889.40 miles round trip)	\$818.00			\$725.40	\$48.60					
	St. Francis (ES paid for)	\$4,500.00		\$4,500.00							
	ANERR time	\$238.00									
01/20/08	Dump truck repair	\$283.45		\$283.45							
01/20/08	Dump Truck repair	\$85.34		\$85.34							
	Backhoe tire repair Dump truck	\$36.55		\$36.55							
01/20/08	repair	\$36.55		\$36.55							
01/20/08	Dump Truck repair	\$75.94		\$75.94							
02/20/08	Dump Truck repair	\$4.94		\$4.94	\$0.33						
01/15/08	Project supplies	\$273.31		\$273.31							



## 2 Final Project Report



**3 Published Report**  
*Assessment of the Effect of Road Construction and Other Modifications of Surface-Water Flow at St. Vincent National Wildlife Refuge, Franklin County, FL*



These St. Vincent case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-stvincent.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-stvincent.zip).



# Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Fort DeSoto Park, Pinellas County, FL*



*A causeway constructed in the 1950s to connect the islands and mainland at the mouth of Tampa Bay was breached by a 40-foot span bridge to restore tidal circulation and benefit more than 1,000 acres of estuarine habitat. The larger circle to the left denotes the location of the constructed bridge; the smaller circle to the right shows the location of the second planned bridge.*

*Photo credit: NOAA*





## Background

In the late 1950s, tidal flow between bays in the Fort DeSoto Park Aquatic Habitat Management Area in Pinellas County, Florida, was severed due to dredging and filling activities for the creation of caseways. Scientific data collected in the late 1970s revealed that the area was degraded due to impediments to tidal flow. Summertime water temperatures in the bays became extremely elevated leading to very low dissolved oxygen levels, as well as severe seagrass stress resulting in blade necrosis. It is estimated that over 1,000 acres of mangrove, soft bottom, and seagrass habitat (approximately 200 acres) were negatively impacted.

## Outcomes / Status

The causeway has been breached and a newly constructed bridge has restored circulation between the bays of Fort DeSoto Park. The channel was lined with limestone boulders and the wingwalls were armored with limestone. The final channel was excavated to match the subsurface grades and allow water to flow. Unforeseen events have made it difficult to interpret the monitoring data; however, some patterns do exist.

- Previously, salinity levels experienced extreme fluctuation based upon rainfall, but levels have become more consistent.
- Quantitative nekton data are difficult to interpret due to extreme events (tropical weather, red tides) following the breach, but observations indicate that fish and crabs migrated into the area within a few days after construction.
- There have been changes in the seagrass population but it is difficult to discern at this time if

they are a result of the project. Heavy matting of some epiphytes has disappeared. Approximately 200 acres of seagrass have the potential to be enhanced or restored but the monitoring plan does not allow for a definitive footprint.

- It will likely take many years for the soil and sediment to respond to increased supply of oxygen in water. Currently, fauna only exist in the uppermost oxygenated sediment layer.

## Lessons Learned

- Predicting project outcomes or preparing for issues that arise can be difficult until the project is underway. For instance, Fort DeSoto was once a bombing range. At the beginning of construction, a magnetometer found a large amount of metal underground. This held up construction, but turned out to be dredge pipe.
- Estimating budget was a challenge; the original estimate of \$1,600,000 was only enough to complete one bridge, though the team had planned to complete two.
- Give careful consideration to bid advertisement language. The original request for bids referred to a “re-circulation” project – bidders thought it was a water line project and few contractors bid. Re-advertising with more appropriate language brought down the cost by approximately \$200,000.

## Project Contact

*Eric Fehrmann*  
Pinellas County Department of  
Environmental Management  
efehrmann@co.pinellas.fl.us  
727-464-4761



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	March to November 2005 (construction)
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Causeways were created in the late 1950s and early 1960s around Fort DeSoto to support access between islands.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	The initial concern was about faunal utilization but over time the focus shifted to seagrass health. Submerged aquatic vegetation (SAV) was primarily affected by the hydrologic changes. Mangrove and soft bottom/sand habitat were negatively impacted by increased organic sedimentation. Increased temperatures and extreme salinity fluctuations were also indicators of ecological impact.
<b>Project Partners</b>	Lead: Pinellas County  Others: NOAA Restoration Center, National Fish and Wildlife Foundation, Tampa Bay Estuary Program, Southwest Florida Water Management District, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
<b>Funding Sources</b>	Southwest Florida Water Management District (SWIM), U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) and USEPA Gulf of Mexico Program, Pinellas County Environmental Foundation, NOAA Community-based Restoration Program, Florida Department of Community Affairs, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals</b>	Restore tidal flow and circulation to improve water quality, SAV, and fisheries habitat.
--------------	--

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Causeway breach; bridge construction; vegetation planting. Beyond original project scope: storm water treatment was incorporated along the road including ponds for runoff.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	Removed a 40-foot section of causeway (widest opening possible at this location for a single-span bridge without additional pilings). A wider opening would have been better for the habitat, but the project team had to balance habitat need with bridge functionality and cost. The project team originally considered two double box culverts, but flow velocity would have been too high and there would have been large pulses of water. With a high water velocity, culvert safety would also have been a concern for boaters. Design required a four-foot clearance at high tide for kayaking and canoeing, stability to withstand a hurricane, and enough structural strength for emergency vehicles. All of this increased costs. Project team had to navigate some Department of Transportation questions about ownership. The approaches and slopes of the created channel were replanted with native vegetation and the area under the channel was lined with native Florida limestone to provide unique and beneficial habitat and provide bottom stability.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	USACE NWP 27; Florida Environmental Resource Permit (followed joint permitting process between state and USACE). Southwest Florida Water Management District permit. Standard permit conditions included a stop work order with manatee sitings. Total process took about one year. Pre-permitting and on-site meetings were very useful.
----------------	---



## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$1,600,000 (\$1,200,00 from non-county partners)
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Construction involved using cranes, a front-end loader, dump trucks, dredge pumps, jet pumps (for pilings), steamrollers, and a long arm excavator. The saltwater environment was damaging to the equipment.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Contractor had to meet construction specifications regarding excavation depths and slopes.

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

<b>Monitoring Budget</b>	\$500,000 for five years.
<b>Scientific Evaluation</b>	Researchers collected pre- and post-restoration data to assess improvements in water circulation, quality, and seagrass health (also analyzing sediment cores and recording fish usage of the restored habitat). The County partnered with the University of South Florida to collect data, including bathymetry; water chemistry (temperature, dissolved oxygen, turbidity, nutrients, and salinity over seven years at seven sites using data loggers); nekton (seined in established seagrass beds and soft bottom sites, block netting in mangroves, identified species, recorded lengths/weights); seagrass (mapped from aerial photography and ground-truthed, shoot counts and epiphytes based on seven years of sampling); macrofauna (swim transects, extreme fluctuation during rainfall and high temps but now has flattened out); and sediments (cores taken to analyze hydrogen sulfide). The site experienced four tropical weather events the first year the bridge opened, and a major red tide the second year. Unforeseen events have made it difficult to evaluate data; however, patterns do exist (see below). Long-term monitoring is needed to evaluate project effectiveness over time.

## Community Involvement

<b>Volunteer Components</b>	Volunteers helped with vegetation planting and scientific sampling.
<b>Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach</b>	Provided news/media events and interviews; produced government access channel program; developed a billboard for Fort DeSoto Trail (hiking, biking, and in-line skating trail) describing the project and its associated benefits. The project has been well received by the public (more so than expected).



*Water quality monitoring was implemented at stations throughout the affected bays both before and after the causeway was breached.*

PHoto credit: NOAA



**Fl. DeSoto Restoration Project Financial Status Report**  
November 16, 2004

**Fl. DeSoto Water Quality Improvement Project Financial Partners:**

Southwest Florida Water Management District	\$416,250
EPA Gulf of Mexico Program	\$100,000
EPA (BHW)	\$50,000
Franklin County Environmental Foundation	\$250,000
NOAA	\$75,000
Designated money from Fl. Dept. of Comm. Affairs (NGAA oil drilling fund)	\$168,828
U.S. Fish & Wildlife (Florida Gulf Coast Coastal Program)	\$70,000
SWM (SWFWMD) mitigation funds from FDOT	\$170,000
<b>Total:</b>	<b>\$1,287,878</b>

**FORT DESOTO RECIRCULATION PROJECT**

**PROJECT DESCRIPTION:** The project will include the construction and performance evaluation of 42 span bridges to replace portions of the flood causeways at Ft. DeSoto Park. Summertime temperatures become extremely elevated in these areas leading to very low dissolved oxygen levels as well as severe seagrass stress and fish kills.

The natural tidal flow and wind driven gulfway water will pass between the cells will help moderate water temperature and improve water quality. Historic circulation patterns that existed prior to the filling of the

Preliminary modeling predicts a 100% exchange of water in 2-30% for the larger bay. The bridges will be designed to allow vessels to travel between the bays and provide a canoe trail to add public benefit.

A public education informational display will be constructed at the project and acknowledge project participants.

## 1 List of Financial Partners for the Fort DeSoto Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

JAN 23 2003

  
**PUBLIC WORKS ENGINEERING SURFACE WATER DIVISION**  
**Transmittal**

**TO:** File

**FROM:** Nancy S. Castles, P.E.  
Permit Coordinator

**SUBJECT:** Southwest Florida Water Management District  
SWFWMD Environmental General Permit  
Fort DeSoto Water Circulation  
SWFWMD Permit No. 44010996.001  
PID No. 821573

**DISTR:** Paul Gilman, P.E., Division Engineer, Public Works Construction  
Charles R. Gibson, P.L.S., Chief, Land Survey Division  
Robert L. Warren, Director, Highway Department  
Elizabeth Warren, Director, Park Department  
Billy Ray, Project Manager, Structures & Parks Engineering

**DATE:** January 23, 2003

The original permit received from the Southwest Florida Water Management District for the above referenced project will be retained in the permit file for reference.

The construction plan set is attached to Construction's distribution copy of the permit.

The below named Engineer is responsible for the As-built drawings certification for this project:

Antonio Harris, P.E.  
Franklin County Engineering  
400 Court Street  
Chowheesee, FL 32706  
727-464-3643

Enclosure

## 2 Southwest Florida Water Management District Environmental General Permit

FEB 4 2003

  
**PUBLIC WORKS ENGINEERING SURFACE WATER DIVISION**  
**Transmittal**

**TO:** File

**FROM:** Nancy S. Castles, P.E.  
Permit Coordinator

**SUBJECT:** Department of the Army  
Fort DeSoto Water Circulation  
Verification - Nationwide Permit 27  
Action ID 20020801 (NR-VB)  
PID No. 821573

**DISTR:** Paul Gilman, P.E., Division Engineer, Public Works Construction  
Charles R. Gibson, P.L.S., Chief, Land Survey Division  
Robert L. Warren, Director, Highway Department  
Billy Ray, Project Manager, Structures & Parks Engineering  
Elizabeth Warren, Director of Park Department

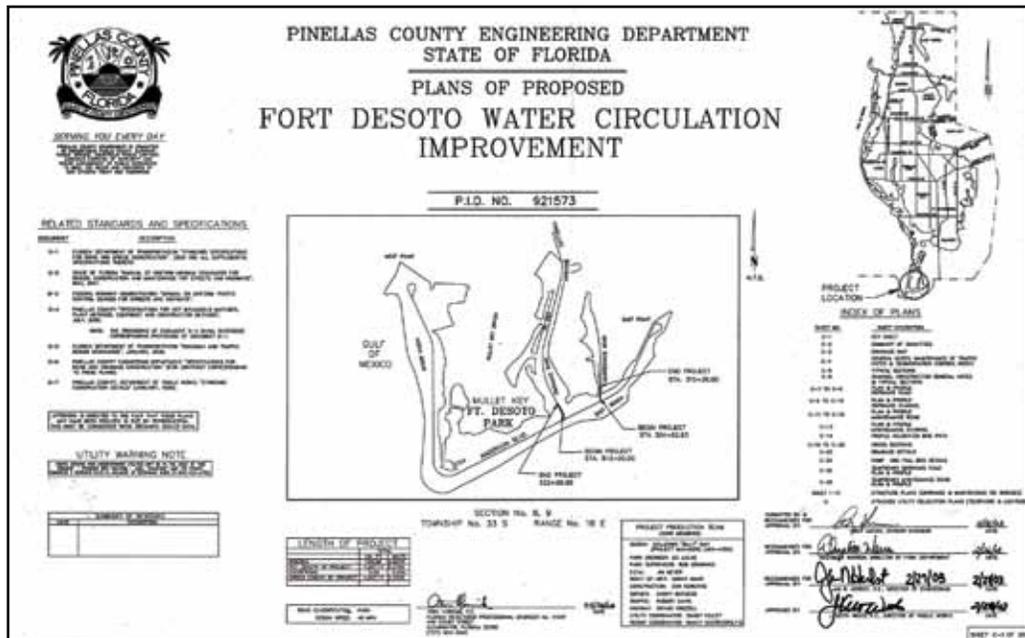
**DATE:** February 3, 2003

The authorization letter was issued January 28<sup>th</sup>, 2003, and remains in effect until January 31<sup>st</sup>, 2005.

Enclosure

## U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Nationwide Permit 27

3



4 Project Designs



These Fort DeSoto case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-fortdesoto.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-fortdesoto.zip).



# Newman Branch Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Apollo Beach, Hillsborough County, FL*



*While the goal of the project was to restore tidal influence to the project site, flexibility in the permit language allowed for on-site modifications. This allowed the project team to create a meandering wetland footprint, thereby saving well-established oak trees.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



## Background

Newman Branch Creek is a tidally influenced waterway that drains into Tampa Bay from the southeastern reaches of Hillsborough County, Florida. The Creek's historic meandering pattern previously supported large amounts of mangrove forest and salt marsh habitats, but much of the Creek was channelized over time, altering adjacent saltern and wetland areas. Approximately 5.1 acres along Newman Branch Creek was heavily modified to operate as an aquacultural facility (tropical fish farm) for many years before being abandoned. The area contained 20 distinct (seven large and 13 smaller) ponds that were hydrologically severed from tidal influences of the Creek and had become dominated by Brazilian pepper (*Schinus terebinthifolius*). Another parcel along the Creek, approximately one acre in size, was entirely infested with Australian pine (*Casuarina equisetifolia*). An additional 5.8-acre area had been altered by the placement of fill during past dredging of the Creek. This restoration project was undertaken to develop an important public-private partnership to restore fish habitat function to privately owned land.

## Outcomes / Status

The project has resulted in approximately 12 acres of habitat restoration including the removal of invasive exotic species (primarily Brazilian pepper and Australian pine), the breaching of a man-made berm to rehydrate a saltern community, and the re-creation of a variety of native estuarine habitats to provide a salinity gradient for marine species. In addition, the surrounding 48 acres have been enhanced by the removal of all the exotic vegetation. Fish, amphibians, birds, and other native species will benefit. It is also anticipated that tens of thousands of visitors will be educated on the importance of these habitat types through Tampa Electric Company's outreach efforts.

## Lessons Learned

- This project was the first public-private venture in the Tampa Bay area specifically formulated for habitat restoration purposes, and paved the way for more of these types of cooperative projects. In fact, this project won the 2008 Environmental Project of the Year award from the Hillsborough County Planning Commission.
- It may be a challenge to justify spending public funds on private property, but the natural resources have no preference for land ownership and the details can be worked out to ensure proper management. Restoration of privately owned areas may be the only option for restoration in some areas.
- Permit applications that can include a "flexibility clause" to allow for some minor on-site modifications during construction, based on on-site conditions, can be beneficial. It can improve the effectiveness of the project and also decrease the costs of stopping construction in order to seek minor permit modifications.
- As-built monitoring is important to ensure that construction achieves the appropriate elevations.

## Project Contact

Thomas F. Ries, Director  
Ecosphere Restoration Institute  
(formerly PEER, Inc.)  
813-376-9076



Additional information on this project can be found online at <http://www.tampaelectric.com/environmental/stewardship/restoration/>.



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	March to August 2007
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	The placement of spoil during the dredging of Newman Branch Creek (presumably to increase water flow to relieve flooding) resulted in loss of tidal influences within the adjacent saltern and wetland communities for approximately 60 years.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	The loss of tidal influence blocked over 5 acres of historic saltern communities from regular tidal flushing, resulting in the loss of habitat functionality. Adjacent historic wetlands (approximately 5 acres) and upland habitat (1 acre) were overtaken by invasive vegetation.
<b>Project Partners</b>	Tampa Electric Company (TECO), Ecosphere Restoration Institute (ERI), Southwest Florida Water Management District's (SWFWMD) Surface Water Improvement and Management (SWIM) program, NOAA Restoration Center, volunteers from TECO.
<b>Funding Sources</b>	NOAA Community-based Restoration Program, Pinellas County Environmental Fund, Southwest Florida Water Management District (SWIM), Tampa Electric Company, Ecosphere Restoration Institute

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals and Objectives</b>	Restore the saltern habitat, and restore/create oligohaline and tidal wetland habitat. Re-establish natural tidal connection to improve habitat quality for fisheries and birds.
-----------------------------	--

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Identify past configuration of the Creek using aerial imagery; breach existing spoil berm; create oligohaline ponds (for amphibians) that flow down into tidal wetlands created from tropical fish farm ponds; breach berms between tropical fish farm ponds to create tidal wetlands.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	Design addressed three distinct areas along the creek, totaling approximately 12 acres. At the northernmost site, breaching interconnected 20 ponds adjacent to Newman Branch Creek to create a freshwater pond and establish a salinity gradient toward the Creek. At the 1-acre upland site, exotic vegetation was removed. The resulting grades were then appropriate for planting of native marsh communities. The third and largest (5.8-acre) site had been altered by the placement of fill during the dredging of the creek. Breaches within the fill areas rehydrated the saltern communities.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	USACE NWP 27; Florida Department of Environmental Protection Notice General (NG) Permit, Hillsborough County EPC Approval, Tampa Port Authority's concurrence.
----------------	--

## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$165,000
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Heavy equipment was used to breach existing spoil berm. Flexibility in permit language allowed for on-site modifications, resulting in ability to meander wetland footprint to save well-established oak trees.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	The construction activities were supervised by an estuarine ecologist to ensure that the appropriate grades and elevations were achieved.



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

### Monitoring Budget

Not available.

### Scientific Evaluation

The Florida Marine Research Institute is currently monitoring species richness and utilization of habitats by avifaunal and fisheries species. Because the wetland site was so heavily colonized with invasive species and because the saltern site was completely cut off from tidal influence, it is assumed that no fish species could use the site previously. Recovery and natural recruitment of the plant communities is also being monitored.

## Community Involvement

### Volunteer Components

To date, hundreds of volunteers have helped plant thousands of native freshwater and estuarine marsh plants.

### Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach

Tampa Electric Company (TECO) provided access to their land (12 acres), placed a perpetual conservation easement over these parcels, funded the removal of all exotic vegetation from the surrounding 48 acres (approximate), and purchased a large educational sign to inform visitors of the importance of these native habitat types. In addition, they organized numerous volunteer planting events. Finally, TECO's adjacent Manatee Viewing Center, which has approximately 315,000 visitors annually, is currently building a recreational trail so people can visit the site and learn of the importance of these native habitats.



*This former fish pond had been overtaken by vegetation, and was not providing fully functional, tidally influenced habitat.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*

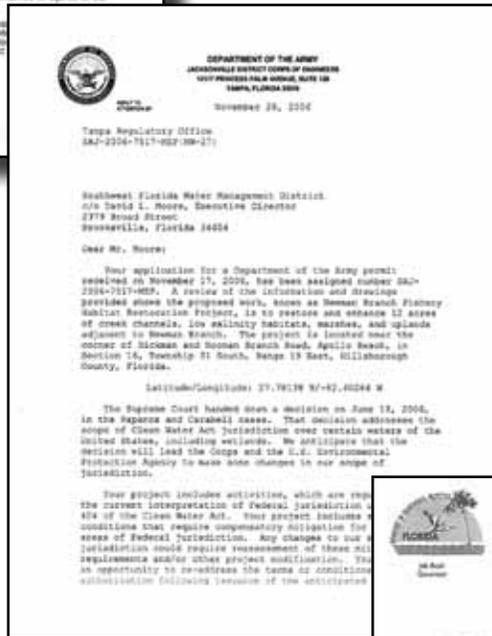


# Additional Newman Branch Restoration Documents Available Online

## 1 Newman Branch Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project Cooperative Agreement

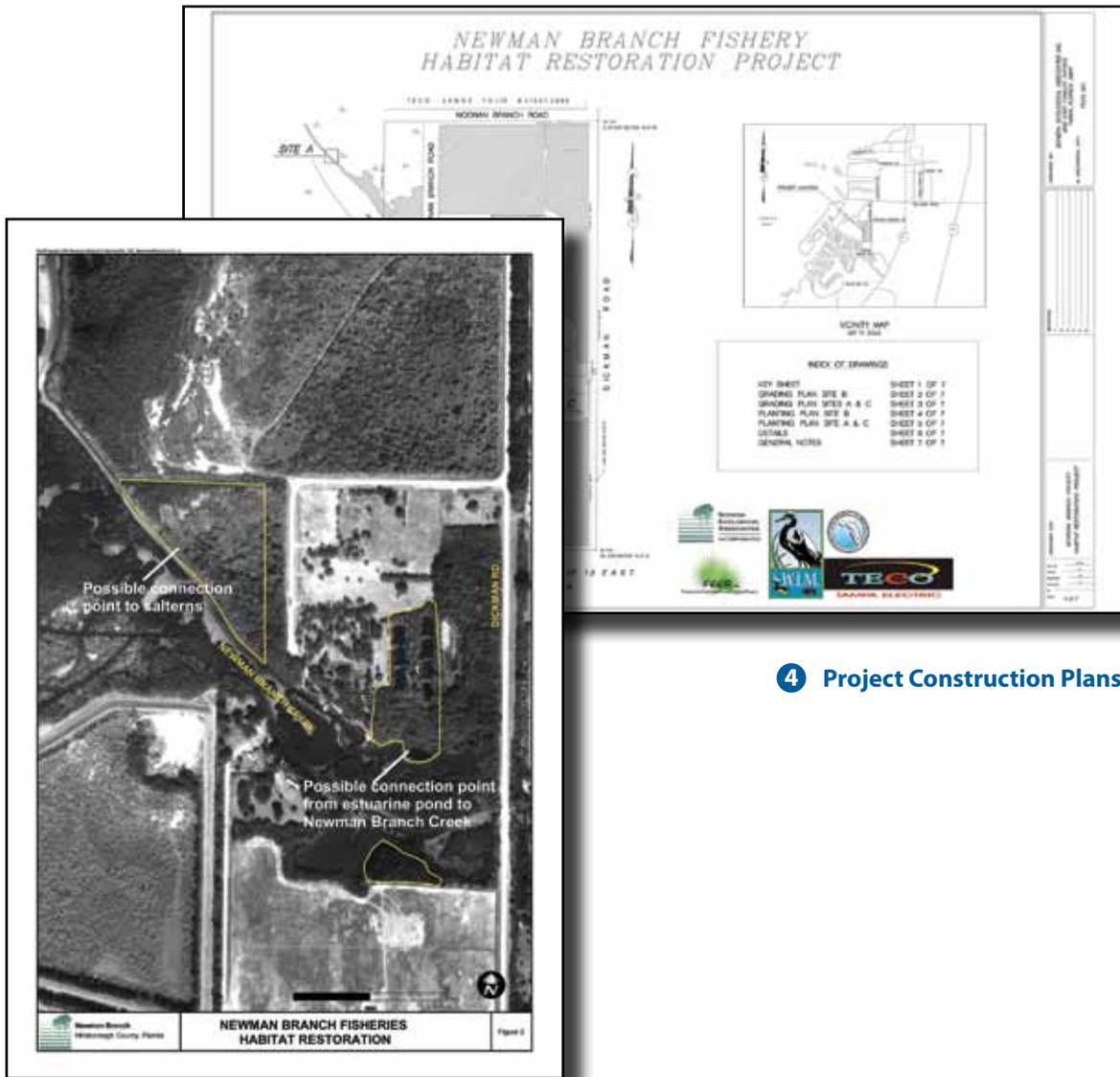


## 2 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Nationwide Permit 27



## 3 Southwest Florida Department of Environmental Protection General Permit Approval



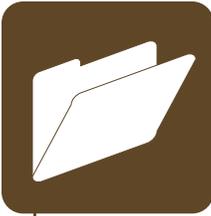


4 Project Construction Plans

5 Aerial View of the Project Site



These Newman Branch materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-newmanbranch.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-newmanbranch.zip).



# Don Pedro Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Cape Haze, Charlotte County, FL*



*Culverts installed under an existing road bed allow for tidal waters flow into the historically degraded marsh site.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



## Background

In the late 1940s, a shell/marl road was created along the mangrove shoreline fringe of Lemon Bay (near Cape Haze) in what is now Don Pedro Island State Park. Material used to build up the road was excavated from the mangroves and marsh habitats. (A house at the end of the road was a drop-off point for anglers to leave their catch for further processing.) Aerials from the mid- to late-1940s show the road restricting tidal flow from the north (Gulf of Mexico) to the south. In addition, on the south end of the site, spoil from canal dredging completely blocked tidal flow to a large salt marsh area, essentially transforming it to a freshwater marsh.

## Outcomes / Status

Culverts were installed under the roadway on the north end of the site and breaches were made in the dredge spoil at the south end of the site with some amount of regrading. Fourteen acres have been treated to remove exotic vegetation: Brazilian pepper (*Schinus terebithifolius*), melaleuca (*Melaleuca quinquinervia*), and cogon grass. In January 2007, prescribed burns were conducted over areas with exotic vegetation. Additional results still pending.

## Lessons Learned

- Start early with logistic planning and lining up contractors.
- Use local contractors unless it is a very large project (costs are lower and they may be more sensitive to local habitat concerns).
- Do not underestimate the project costs; the simplest project is not necessarily simple to implement.

- Plan for high transport costs for dredge spoil removal.
- Be prepared for delays due to weather impacts if you are in a hurricane-prone area. In this case, hurricane-impacts caused delays in getting contractors on board. Material and equipment costs increased as well.
- Remember the pre-application process is very important (staff turnover at regulatory agencies may require that you hold additional meetings).
- Specify types of equipment the construction contractor may and may not use if working at a sensitive site (due to the damage that can be done). For example, consider specifying soft track/tire/tread equipment.
- Remember that the damage done by construction is sometimes not worth the benefit of the project.
- Work closely with and supervise contractor during on-site construction.
- Call contractor references to verify past projects implemented.



---

For more information, please visit the Don Pedro Island State Park website at <http://www.floridastateparks.org/donpedroisland/default.cfm>.

---

## Project Contact

*Annette Nielsen*  
Florida Department of  
Environmental Protection  
Division of Recreation and Parks  
Charlotte Harbor Preserve  
[annette.nielsen@dep.state.fl.us](mailto:annette.nielsen@dep.state.fl.us)  
941-575-5861  
941-964-2965 (Don Pedro Park)



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	Spring 2008
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Road construction and dredge spoil disposal blocked tidal flow to mangrove and marsh system.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	Thirty-two acres of mangrove and salt marsh were impacted due to road construction and dredge and fill activities. Drying of the mangrove system resulted in unhealthy mangroves and the invasion of exotic species ( <i>maleueca</i> and Brazilian pepper, Australian pines). The salt marsh system was almost entirely converted to a freshwater marsh system.
<b>Project Partners</b>	<p>Lead: Florida Department of Environmental Protection – Division of Recreation and Parks</p> <p>Others: NOAA Community-based Restoration Program, Barrier Islands Park Society, Charlotte Harbor Environmental Learning Center, Inc., Charlotte Harbor National Estuary Program.</p>
<b>Funding Sources</b>	Gulf of Mexico Foundation, NOAA Community-based Restoration Program, Barrier Island Park Society

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals</b>	Restore tidal flow to 32 acres of salt marsh and mangrove habitat by eliminating obstruction to tidal flow, thereby eliminating the exotic and invasive species. Remove fill from south end of the site (dredge spoil area) and install four culverts on the north end of the site beneath an existing roadway.
--------------	---

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Installation of four culverts (none previously in place); removal of invasive vegetation; breaching and grading of dredge spoil (brought down to appropriate elevation for salt marsh and mangroves). Conducted prescribed burn in some areas.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	A great deal of work was done with SWFWMD to ensure that the culvert placement and designs allowed for tidal flow and circulation. An engineering contractor completed surveys for culvert design, placement, and background studies of the site for previous land use permitting, and recommended four 18-inch culverts, each 12 feet long. (The roadbed is not appropriate for heavy vehicle traffic and mostly accommodates pedestrians.) Insufficient funding was obtained to complete removal of all dredge spoil, since transportation of material for removing dredge spoil was cost prohibitive. An engineering company helped identify the most cost-effective areas to remove dredge spoil. Low velocity of flow over dredge spoil area meant that stabilization of the dredge spoil was not of concern.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	USACE NWP 27 (submitted letter and copy of Southwest Florida Water Management District permit and the federal permit was approved within a matter of days). The permitting process with the Southwest Florida Water Management District was lengthy. There were numerous engineering requirements (less information required on the ecology of the project) since SWFWMD had concerns about upstream flooding. This required a lot of engineering drawings and data that resulted in extra time and expenses by the project team. A pre-application meeting was held, but staff turnover at the regulatory agency held up the process as new staff were educated on the project.
----------------	--



## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$104,800 (\$30,753 for consulting on design, drawings, permitting, and as-built; \$39,228 for construction including excavation, culvert placement, construction of coffer dams near scour locations, capping road bed)
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Construction equipment included a front-end loader, backhoe, larger tractor for placing culverts, and a dump truck. During construction phase, it was determined that the road bed material was not appropriate to support the culverts so had to cap with other materials (shell).
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Team monitored culvert locations and elevations, and dredge spoil grading elevations (to match elevation of adjacent marsh).

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

<b>Scientific Evaluation</b>	Currently undergoing monitoring. Another season (at least) is needed to evaluate project and seasonal transport. Team is currently using elevation stakes to monitor tidal height and vegetative changes using photo points and random transects (looking for both exotics and native species). Conducted pre- and post-project surveys of wading birds.
------------------------------	--

## Community Involvement

<b>Volunteer Components</b>	Seventeen volunteers have contributed over 250 hours, plus additional hours that were not captured. Volunteers helped primarily with exotic species removal, coastal cleanup, and outreach. They also organized and led two kayak trips through the restored mangrove site.
<b>Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach</b>	Stakeholder involvement was a challenge; local interest in project was low. The project team conducted some outreach to developers working across the highway (to discuss future plans for the land) and invited new residents to participate in volunteer programs. The team worked with partners, Barrier Island Park Society and Charlotte Harbor Environmental Center, to conduct wading trips at Lemon Bay. An interpretive program was developed to demonstrate the ecology of the area and why restoration was important. Kiosk, signs, and flyers (seagrass, mangroves, and marsh education) were also created to increase project support and awareness.



*Dredge spoil resulting from canal creation and maintenance was breached to allow for tidal flow through the southern portion of the restoration site.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*







# Clam Bayou Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Sanibel Island, Lee County, FL*





## Background

In the 1950s and 1960s land-bridges, or causeways, were constructed to connect Sanibel and Captiva Islands to mainland Florida. The construction of these causeways using dredged material from the adjacent bayous, along with other development, bisected Clam Bayou and Dinkins Bayou and halted all natural tidal flushing between the two mangrove-dominated systems. This transformed the area from a healthy tidal estuary to an artificially impounded freshwater system. More than 150 acres of mangroves were lost, healthy oyster reefs and seagrass beds disappeared, water quality declined, and important nursery and estuarine fisheries habitat degraded, resulting in the complete collapse of this estuary.

## Outcomes / Status

As of 2006, tidal flushing has been restored between Clam and Dinkins Bayou. Three box culverts, placed under the causeway, allow water to flow between the two bayous, reestablishing an appropriate salinity regime and natural daily tidal flows. This directly benefits a total of 400 acres of habitat (150 acres of mangroves, more than 20 acres of oyster bars, and more than 120 acres of seagrass beds).

*Three box culverts, placed under the causeway, allow tidal water to flow between two bayous that had been hydrologically separated since construction of the road in the 1950s and 1960s.*

Photo Credit: NOAA

## Lessons Learned

- Project was a success, specifically for seagrass, oysters, and fish in Clam and Dinkins Bayou.
- Mangroves will take longer to fully establish on restoration site edge.
- This concept may have application at other nearby locations. Project team is actively pursuing other similar projects.
- Volume of water and flow velocity are critical for determining size of culvert. Recommend measuring the volume and velocity at most restricted point, then using that information to determine the size of breach required at the new flow point.

## Project Contact

*Robert Loflin*  
Natural Resources Director  
City of Sanibel  
rob.loflin@ci.sanibel.fl.us  
239-472-3700



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	March 2004 to February 2006
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Dredge and fill causeways were constructed to provide access from the mainland to Sanibel and Captiva Islands. The causeways cut off tidal flow to mangrove habitat in Clam and Dinkins Bayou creating an impounded freshwater system.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	Four hundred acres of estuarine habitat were blocked from tidal influence resulting in extreme salinity fluctuations, periodic low dissolved oxygen levels, fish kills, and algae growth. Habitats included mangrove, oyster reef/shell bottom, salt marsh, submerged aquatic vegetation, and soft bottom.
<b>Project Partners</b>	<i>Lead:</i> City of Sanibel  <i>Others:</i> NOAA's Community-based Restoration Program, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, South Florida Water Management District, Sanibel-Captiva Conservation Foundation, Clam Bayou Preservation Association, JN Ding Darling National Wildlife Refuge.
<b>Funding Sources</b>	NOAA Community-based Restoration Program, Fish America Foundation, South Florida Water Management District, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, City of Sanibel.

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals</b>	Restore salt marsh and natural habitat; prevent fish kills and mangrove die-offs; restore seagrass beds and oyster bars; and improve water quality.
--------------	---

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Culvert installation (three 10-foot by 10-foot, side by side, poured on site); mangrove planting.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	The team determined that hydrologic flushing would be best achieved through the installation of three box culverts beneath Sanibel-Captiva Road. These culverts would provide a permanent tidal connection to Dinkins Bayou and the greater water body of Pine Island Sound. Important design inputs included volume of flow, invert elevation of culverts, local tidal elevation, and desire to keep channel as natural (with minimal hardening) as possible. Engineering considerations included bathymetry and hydrologic modeling. Sea level rise was not considered in the design (life span of culvert is only 40 years). Minor changes in design identified during planning and construction involved using more lime rock and rip-rap to secure banks since tidal velocity was higher than expected. (This alternative was selected instead of seawalls which provide little habitat value.)

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	USACE NWP 27 (no delays associated with ESA or NEPA – the permitted design allowed for manatee movement). Florida DEP General Permit (took a few months).
----------------	---



## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$875,000 (\$200,000 for land acquisition)
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Project team was pleased with the contractors and engineers. Team encountered some issues associated with managing utility pipes and power lines along road. (This was planned into design but was time consuming due to negotiations with individual utilities.) Project also required traffic management. Again, this was anticipated but did take time and care. Construction equipment included track hoe (large excavator), loaders, bulldozers to remove road surface, and a dump truck for fill rock.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Measured invert elevations of culverts (critical in order to achieve maximum flow). Road construction also had critical design elements that were inspected by the City of Sanibel's Public Works Department.

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

<b>Scientific Evaluation</b>	Monitored parameters include temperature, vegetation presence or absence, fish density and diversity (seine netting, identify all fish), and salinity. Team also monitored for habitat stabilization and persistence.
------------------------------	---

## Community Involvement

<b>Volunteer Components</b>	Volunteers helped with numerous mangrove plantings.
<b>Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach</b>	Clam Bayou Preservation Association (formed by the surrounding homeowners) was the early force behind the project with initial interest focused on aesthetics of the stagnant system. They hired a coastal engineer to study bayou flow and bathymetry. The City of Sanibel then took over the project and had a comprehensive assessment of the site conducted. The citizens remained engaged in vegetation planting of over 5,000 mangroves.



*Local volunteers planted more than 5,000 mangroves following construction of the box culverts.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



# Additional Clam Bayou Restoration Documents Available Online



1 Clam Bayou Culvert Feasibility Study Scope of Work



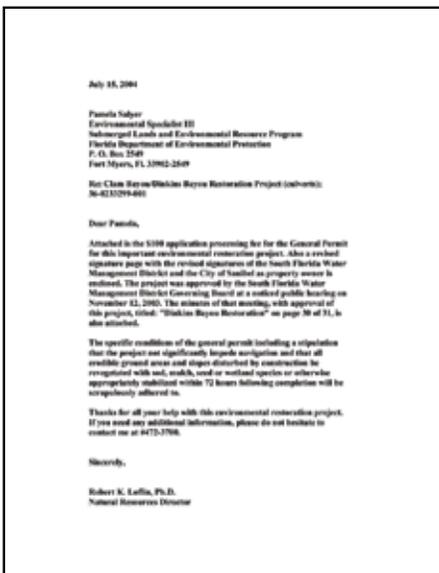
2 U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service ESA Determination Letter



3 Technical Specifications for the Clam Bayou Box Culvert



Advertisement for Bids 4



5 Florida Department of Environmental Protection General Permit Application



These Clam Bayou case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-clambayou.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-clambayou.zip).



**6 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Permit Application**

September 7, 2004

Mike Naudki  
Project Manager  
West Florida Section  
Department of the Army  
Jacksonville District Corps of Engineers  
P.O. Box 4970  
Jacksonville, Florida 32212-0970

Re: Clam Bayou Review  
(NWR 024)

Dear Mike:

Attached please find a re-  
newation project (the  
District Report) and the  
temporary eas to the G  
combined both of these  
applications.

We are all set with local  
and federal reviews, the  
permitting and are back  
office so we can schedule

Thanks for all your help  
renew this project. If we  
don't hear from you we  
will be in touch.

Sincerely,

Robert K. Laffin, Ph.D.  
Natural Resources Director

June 17, 2004

Ministry Day 4 July  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
South Florida Ecological Services Office  
1139 20th Street  
Vero Beach, Florida 32986

Re: Clam Bayou Emergency Drainage

Dear Mr. Laffin:

We discussed recently with Tim Adams of your office, we were again aware  
of the potential impacts to the Clam Bayou and Duckbill Marsh due to  
a wet 11" of seasonal spring rain, in part due to Duckbill Marsh. As  
you know we are active  
which means emergency, and  
flowing of lower elevation of  
water to Clam Bayou with the  
emergency allowed by legal  
agreement. We anticipate that  
to that construction can begin  
in the District (4-27) as  
normally occurring, seasonal  
rainfall and that the District  
should August 15, 2004 (and  
temporarily to reduce the  
existing water. As an added  
a permit area for 100 feet to be  
open of 100 feet and 7 feet  
widths are established on the  
the design. This highlights  
existing of the soil, and the  
existing to completed and the 1/2  
year.

Attached are initial phases of  
the project to be used as a  
reference and also a copy of  
Construction Easements, as  
existing at the project site. As  
are located within the project  
boundary by each owner over  
business-related boundaries.

**7 Letter to the U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service Regarding Clam Bayou Emergency Drainage**

**CONSTRUCTION PLANS  
FOR  
CLAM BAYOU-DINKINS BAYOU BOX CULVERT  
TRIPLE 10' X 6'**

SECTION 12 TOWNSHIP 46 S., RANGE 21 E.  
SANIBEL, FLORIDA

**INDEX OF PLANS**

- 1. GENERAL NOTES
- 2. PLAN
- 3. ELEVATION
- 4. SECTION
- 5. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 6. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 7. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 8. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 9. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 10. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 11. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 12. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 13. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 14. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 15. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 16. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 17. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 18. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 19. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 20. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 21. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 22. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 23. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 24. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 25. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 26. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 27. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 28. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 29. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 30. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 31. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 32. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 33. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 34. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 35. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 36. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 37. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 38. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 39. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 40. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 41. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 42. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 43. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 44. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 45. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 46. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 47. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 48. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 49. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 50. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 51. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 52. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 53. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 54. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 55. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 56. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 57. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 58. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 59. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 60. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 61. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 62. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 63. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 64. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 65. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 66. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 67. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 68. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 69. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 70. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 71. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 72. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 73. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 74. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 75. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 76. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 77. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 78. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 79. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 80. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 81. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 82. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 83. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 84. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 85. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 86. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 87. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 88. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 89. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 90. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 91. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 92. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 93. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 94. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 95. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 96. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 97. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 98. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 99. CONSTRUCTION MAP
- 100. CONSTRUCTION MAP

**OWNER**

**RECEIVED**

**JOHNSON ENGINEERING**

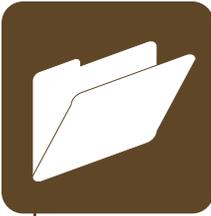
**CONTINUATION SHEET**  
AIA FORMAT DOCUMENT G703

APPLICATION NO: 0274-REV  
APPLICATION DATE: 09/01/2006  
PERIOD TO: 04/08/2006  
ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NO:

ITEM NO.	DESCRIPTION OF WORK	SCHEDULED VALUE	WORK COMPLETED		MATERIALS PRESENTLY STORED (NOT IN D OR E)	TOTAL COMPLETED AND STORED TO DATE (D+E+F)	%	BALANCE TO REMAIN (G-I)	RETAINAGE
			FROM PREVIOUS APPLICATION (D-E)	THIS PERIOD (E-F)					
1	MOBILIZATION	\$95,774.00	\$95,774.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$95,774.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
2	TEMPORARY DRIVEWAY	\$64,800.00	\$64,800.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$64,800.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
3	DRIVEWAY	\$16,321.00	\$16,321.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$16,321.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
4	EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURE	\$57,482.00	\$57,482.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$57,482.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
5	CONCRETE 4000 PSI	\$215,820.00	\$215,820.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$215,820.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
6	REINFORCEMENT STEEL	\$25,248.00	\$25,248.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$25,248.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
7	FORMWORK	\$19,353.00	\$0.00	\$19,353.00	\$0.00	\$19,353.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
8	MECHANICAL	\$2,402.00	\$2,402.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$2,402.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
9	PAINTING	\$63,820.00	\$63,820.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$63,820.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
10	CONCRETE PAINTING	\$19,250.00	\$19,250.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$19,250.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
11	PERMANENT SIGNAGE	\$5,200.00	\$5,200.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$5,200.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
12	CONCRETE CURING 18 GAL PER GALLON	\$4,800.00	\$4,800.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$4,800.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
13	CONCRETE CURING 15 GAL PER GALLON	\$5,376.00	\$5,376.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$5,376.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
14	CONCRETE CURING 12 GAL PER GALLON	\$6,000.00	\$6,000.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$6,000.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
15	CONCRETE CURING 10 GAL PER GALLON	\$2,200.00	\$2,200.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$2,200.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
16	CONCRETE CURING 8 GAL PER GALLON	\$1,050.00	\$1,050.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1,050.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
17	CONCRETE CURING 6 GAL PER GALLON	\$1,150.00	\$1,150.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1,150.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
18	CONCRETE CURING 4 GAL PER GALLON	\$1,700.00	\$1,700.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1,700.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
19	CONCRETE CURING 3 GAL PER GALLON	\$3,650.00	\$3,650.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$3,650.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
20	CONCRETE CURING 2 GAL PER GALLON	\$6,154.00	\$6,154.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$6,154.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
21	CONCRETE CURING 1 GAL PER GALLON	\$4,000.00	\$4,000.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$4,000.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
22	CONCRETE CURING 0.5 GAL PER GALLON	\$700.00	\$700.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$700.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
23	CONCRETE CURING 0.25 GAL PER GALLON	\$1,200.00	\$1,200.00	\$0.00	\$0.00	\$1,200.00	100.00%	\$0.00	\$0.00
<b>GRAND TOTALS</b>		<b>\$647,760.00</b>	<b>\$647,760.00</b>	<b>\$0.00</b>	<b>\$0.00</b>	<b>\$647,760.00</b>	<b>100%</b>	<b>\$0.00</b>	<b>\$0.00</b>

**Project Construction Plans 8**

**Contractor Bid for Construction 9**



# Tarpon Bay Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Isles of Capri, Collier County, FL*





## Background

In the development boom of the 1950s and 1960s, a road was constructed on the Florida gulf coast connecting a small group of islands called the Isles of Capri. This road was designed without any culverts or bridges and consequently halted all tidal flushing and water transport between the islands. This complete bisection of the two major bay systems, Johnson Bay and Tarpon Bay, resulted in poor water quality and degradation of important nursery and estuarine habitat.

## Outcomes / Status

The first phase of the project has resulted in the installation of a 10-foot by 10-foot box culvert that allows for tidal exchange and manatee passage between the two bays. Mangroves are recruiting well, but it is still too early to determine changes in water quality and fisheries (although local homeowner anecdotes suggest that water quality appears to be improved).



For more information, please visit the Tarpon Bay website at <http://www.rookerybay.org/publications/past-projects/tarpon-bay-hydrologic-restoration>.

## Lessons Learned

- Have realistic goals based on funding.
- Be involved with the community. Community buy-in will be important for project support and overall success.
- Be prepared for unexpected problems to arise. Even sound project design and planning cannot curtail all issues a project team may encounter.
- Seek recommendations on contracting/construction companies. After failures of one company, the company hired by the project team to complete construction was actually recommended by another resource organization.
- Conduct more pre-project monitoring, especially flow rates.

## Project Contact

Rookery Bay  
National Estuarine Research Reserve  
Florida Department of  
Environmental Protection  
239-417-6310

*Construction of a 10-foot by 10-foot culvert reconnected Johnson and Tarpon Bay, which had been hydrologically separated since construction of a causeway in the 1950s.*

Photo Credit: NOAA



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	August 2003 to April 2004
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	A road/causeway was constructed connecting the multiple islands, the Isles of Capri. Fill material was transported to the site; no dredge material was used.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	Road construction that halted tidal flushing resulted in degraded water quality and seagrass habitat. Fisheries resources were also impacted.
<b>Project Partners</b>	Lead: Rookery Bay NERR  Others: NOAA Restoration Center, Florida Department of Environmental Protection, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Isle of Capri Civic Association
<b>Funding Sources</b>	NOAA Community-based Restoration Program, U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service Coastal Program

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals</b>	Restore natural flushing between Johnson Bay (approximately 480 acres) and Tarpon Bay (approximately 360 acres) by removing fill material, and installing two culverts and one small bridge to reconnect the two bays (the current project phase completed one culvert). Re-establish tidal exchange to improve water quality, resulting in positive effects on seagrass beds and associated organisms.
--------------	---

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	One culvert installation; one culvert and small bridge installation pending.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	Installed a 10-foot by 10-foot box culvert with an interior of 8 by 8 feet so that manatees could pass through. Volume and velocities of flow, as well as manatee passage, has major influence on project design. Aerial photos used extensively to determine appropriate culvert sites.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	USACE Nationwide Permit 27. "No effect" determination for ESA. South Florida Water Management District; Collier County vegetation removal permit.
----------------	---

## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$1,295,000
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Original project contractors presented several problems, including using inappropriate equipment (equipment was too small for a major project), leaving trash behind, damaging nearby property, and creating safety issues at the site. After contracting with a different construction firm, large backhoes and a large crane were utilized, along with dewatering equipment. Project fell seven months behind schedule and resulted in working long hours.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Evaluated invert elevation; location and placement of rip rap; channel width and depth.



## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

### Scientific Evaluation

Collected baseline data, such as bathymetric mapping, water quality, species surveys, and vegetation maps. Monitoring has continued throughout this project with the help of local volunteers. Three areas are surveyed routinely:

- 1) Mangrove monitoring, both recruitment and planting (e.g., photopoints; counting other vegetation species);
- 2) Water quality (too soon to tell effect even after five years); quarterly samples sent to Lakewatch (free service) to analyze phosphorus, nitrogen, and chlorophyll-a levels;
- 3) Species surveys, twice a year, dry season and wet season (trawling at three different locations for presence/absence – too early to tell, but not seeing major community shift).

## Community Involvement

### Volunteer Components

Restoration project volunteers were involved with mangrove planting, water quality monitoring, and fisheries monitoring.

### Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach

The restoration site was very visible to the local community so the project team attended civic association monthly meetings and provided project updates. An article about the project was also published in a local newspaper.

*A tidal channel flowing through the installed box culvert (foreground, below flowers) was created by the removal of fill dirt from the causeway.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



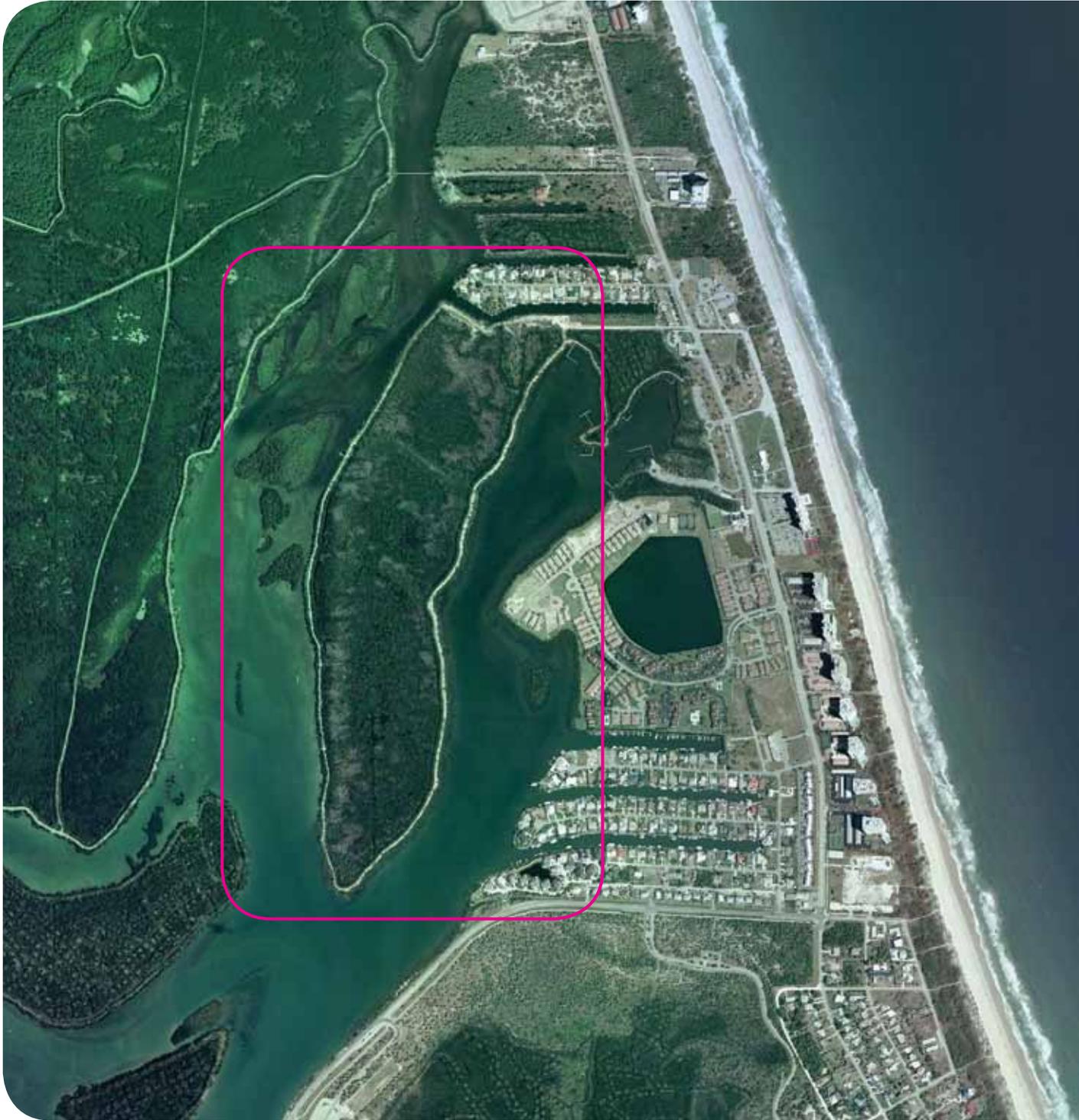






# Wildcat Cove Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*North Hutchinson Island, St. Lucie County, FL*



## Background

Wildcat Cove Preserve encompasses 129 acres and stretches for two miles along the Indian River Lagoon (IRL) on the east coast of Florida. This preserve was once a high salt marsh subject to tidal flows and dominated by black and white mangrove, saltwort and glasswort. In the early 1960s, this salt marsh was impounded for mosquito control purposes and eventually became completely disconnected from the lagoon. Over time, the estuarine habitat related functions declined.

## Outcomes / Status

The historic wetland hydrology of the Wildcat Cove Preserve site has been restored through the placement of culverts and removal of invasive plant species. Six culverts were installed to reconnect the impounded mangrove habitat of the preserve to the IRL. Water flow and tidal exchange between the two water bodies has been restored, which in turn helped stabilize approximately 94 acres of mangrove habitat and almost 5 acres of upland habitat.

## Lessons Learned

- Studies of this technique at similar sites in the area show increases in health of seagrass beds on outside of new culverts.

- Perimeter ditches created by the impounding process (being the borrow-area from which the dike fill material was removed), appeared to function similarly to tidal creek-like habitat, when remaining open year-round. (Gilmore, et al. 1987)
- Data from the open marsh revealed that 38 species of marine fish utilized the man-made perimeter ditch system, which was constantly open to the estuary, compared with 12 species for the isolated impounded marsh. (Gilmore, et al. 1987)
- Marshes with lower substrate elevation (+0.3 to +0.8 feet NGVD) appear to require greater numbers of culverts, as many as 10 ac/culvert, to approximate high wind-tide elevations in the open period. Those open impoundments with higher substrate elevations (+1.3 feet NGVD and above), appear to require fewer culverts, approximately 16 ac/culvert (+/-). (Gilmore, et. al. 1987).

## Project Contact

*Jim David*, Director  
Saint Lucie County  
Mosquito Control District  
j david@co.st-lucie.fl.us  
(772) 462-1686

*Common mosquito control management practices of the past led to the impoundment and subsequent impairment of vast amounts of Florida's salt marshes. Fortunately, new techniques in mosquito control have been developed that are allowing the return of tidal flushing to these areas. The 129-acre Wildcat Cove Preserve serves as a model of this new type of management that controls mosquito's while also providing valuable estuarine habitat*

Photo Credit: © Google 2007, © TerraMetrics 2010; Satellite imagery by U.S. Geological Survey



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	January 2005 to February 2006
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	In order to improve the quality of life for residents and expand development, dikes were built around salt marshes in the 1960's, creating impoundments that eliminated the conditions for mosquito breeding.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	The mangrove and salt marsh system were eventually disconnected from the IRL and tidal flushing. Over time, impoundments trapped water, creating floods that destroyed the high marsh vegetation. Water quality conditions also deteriorated and transient juvenile fish could not access the area. Creeks remained within impounded areas but were left as "dead ends" at interfaces with the dikes.
<b>Project Partners</b>	South Florida Water Management District, Marine Resources Council, Fish America Foundation, St. Lucie Mosquito Control District, Florida Communities Trust, University of Florida, Florida Office of Greenways and Trails.
<b>Funding Sources</b>	NOAA's Community-based Restoration Program, Fish America Foundation, St. Lucie County Mosquito Control District

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals and Objectives</b>	Goal: Increase hydrologic connectivity through installation of culverts  Objectives: Rrestore high marsh vegetation, improve water quality and allow fisheries access.
-----------------------------	--

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Installation of culverts through dikes. Removal of invasive plant species and replacement with native vegetation.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	Corrugated aluminum culverts of 30-inch diameter set at -2.5 NAVD were placed at 500-foot intervals to achieve optimal flushing, fisheries access, and diversity. Culvert is 68% full at mean high tide. Modeling was not used; conducted initial flow studies. No new channels were created within impounded system.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	"Standard General Permit" from state. The state coordinated all other permitting issues with all state and federal agencies.
----------------	--

*A series of culverts were installed through the berm impounding the wildcat cove preserve that restored historic tidal flow from the Indian River Lagoon.*

*Photo Credit: NOAA*



## Construction and Maintenance

**Total Budget** \$84,000 (\$5,000 per culvert)

**Construction Narrative** The culvert installation process occurred over a three-day period. An excavator was used to create ditches for the culverts by excavating the center of 30-foot dike. "Keyways" were then set on either side. On the second day, keyways were popped and culverts were dropped and set in ditch over geotextile fabric. The keyways were set again very quickly. This was done in 15-20 minutes, right when the tide was at extreme low to minimize turbidity. On the third day, dirt and rip rap were put in to secure culverts, completing the construction.

**As-built Monitoring** Culvert elevation

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

**Monitoring Budget** Not available.

**Scientific Evaluation** Several water quality parameters were monitored, including: temperature, salinity, dissolved oxygen, pH, and redox. Water levels within the preserve, vegetation growth, wildlife, and mosquito landing rates were also monitored. Fisheries were not monitored, but results from a similar project in the area have shown direct benefit around new culverts for spawning sea trout, snook, and redfish.

## Community Involvement

**Volunteer Components** Volunteers participated in planting of native vegetation within impoundments.

**Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach** Educational signs were placed at strategic points within the Wildcat Cove Preserve describing the importance of preserving wetlands, mangrove communities, and seagrass beds.

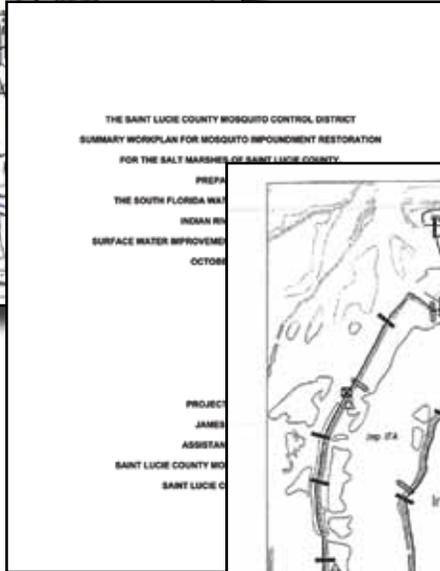




# Additional Wildcat Cove Restoration Documents Available Online



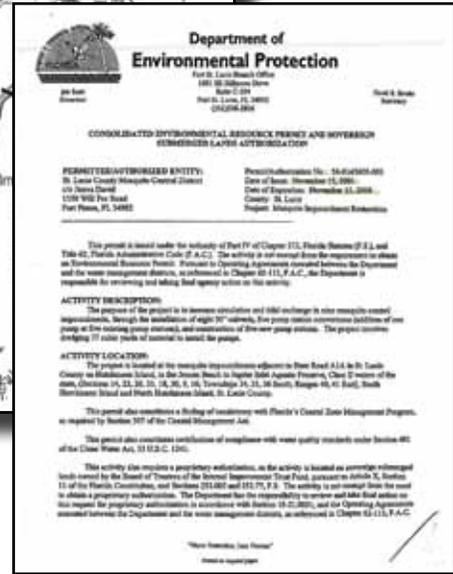
1 Wildcat Cove Project Location Maps



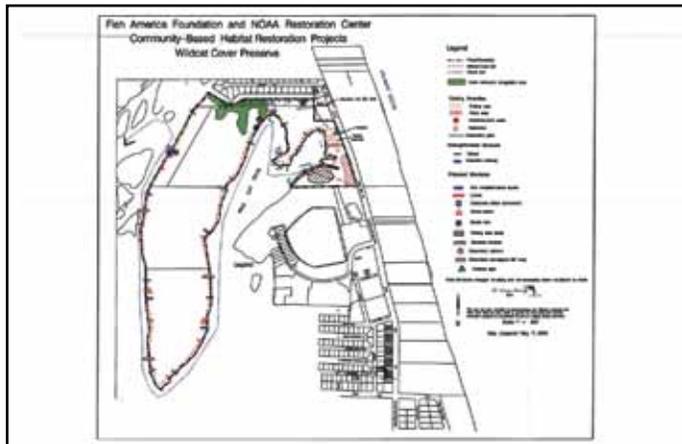
2 Project Work Plan



3 Engineering Drawings



4 Florida Department of Environmental Protection General Environmental Resource Permit



5 Conceptual Site Plan



These Wildcat Cove materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-wildcatcove.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-wildcatcove.zip).



## 6 FishAmerica Foundation Application for Funding

## 7 Expense Report

## 8 Restoration Evaluation Plan



## 9 Final Project Report



## 10 Additional Project Photos

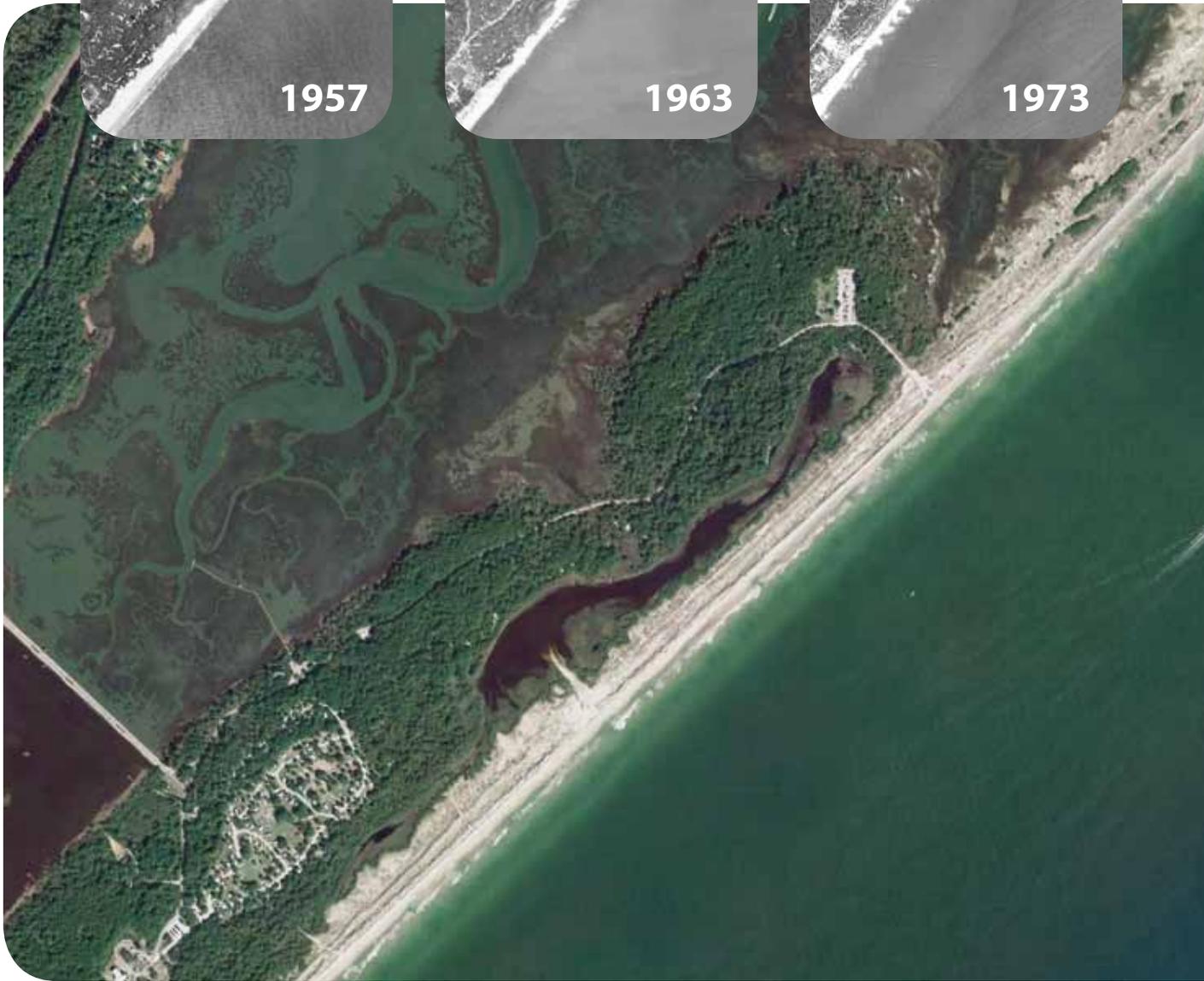
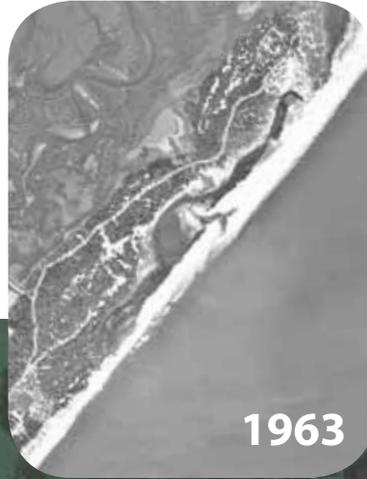
## 11 Published Report Wetland Management for Mosquito Control

## 12 Interpretive Brochure



# Sandpiper Pond Tidal Hydrology Restoration Project

*Huntington Beach State Park, Georgetown County, SC*





2007

## Background

Throughout its history, Sandpiper Pond maintained a continuous connection with the ocean by way of a meandering inlet through coastal dunes. The construction of the Murrells Inlet Jetties in the vicinity of this 35-acre estuary eventually caused changes in the coastal geologic processes that led to the acceleration of sediment accretion on adjacent beaches. This impact, coupled with several tropical storms, led to the eventual development of large sand dunes and eventual blockage of the inlet. Subsequently, the lack of tidal flushing led to the slow degradation of the estuary that culminated in multiple fish kill events.

## Outcomes / Status

Since the tidal connection between Sandpiper Pond and the ocean has been reestablished, the site has steadily continued to return to its historic estuarine condition. Salinity levels have stabilized and the coverage of spartina grass has expanded. Birds and marine organisms have returned to inhabit the pond. Overall the project resulted in the restoration of 35 acres of salt marsh and tidal mudflats.



Additional information can be found online at the Huntington Beach State Park website at [www.southcarolinaparks.com/park-finder/state-park/1020.aspx](http://www.southcarolinaparks.com/park-finder/state-park/1020.aspx).

## Lessons Learned

- The original inlet was cut on a direct line between the pond and ocean, resulting in slowly eroding walls that eventually required maintenance. A meandering channel was then built and was found to maintain the opening for longer intervals.
- Participation by the local university yielded tremendous help for the project relating to the collection of scientific monitoring data and implementation of educational activities.
- Adaptive management of the project led to the identification of an outlying area of the pond that was lagging behind in terms of water quality improvement. This led to the development of a second phase of the project that included placement of a culvert underneath a road adjacent to the inlet. This action greatly improved tidal flushing in the area.

## Project Contact

*Mike Walker*  
Huntington Beach State Park  
16148 Ocean HWY  
Murrells Inlet, SC 29576  
(843) 235-8755

*Sandpiper Pond in Murrells Inlet, SC, is a dynamic coastal estuary that for decades connected with the Atlantic Ocean by way of a continuously meandering channel. Due to accelerated sedimentation rates, the pond became impounded and a series of fish kills occurred. Current management of the pond by the South Carolina State Parks includes maintenance of the tidal connection.*

Photo Credit: Data from SIO, NOAA, U.S. Navy, NGA, GEBCO

Image U.S. Geological Survey, Image ©2010 TerraMetrics, ©2007 Google



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	July 2004 to July 2005
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Sandpiper Pond was not intentionally impounded. The inlet connecting the pond with the ocean became closed in the early 1990s due to accretion of sediments. This was caused by the alteration of coastal geologic functions due to the construction of the Murrells Inlet Jetties. Additionally, hurricanes and other coastal storms contributed to the blockage of the inlet. Historical photos indicate that the inlet meandered for decades, but always remained open to the ocean.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	Thirty-five acres of estuarine habitat (including salt marsh and tidal mud flat) were blocked from tidal influence due to the blockage of an inlet, resulting in extreme salinity fluctuations, low dissolved oxygen levels, invasion of <i>Phragmites</i> , and fish kills. Shorebird and migratory bird habitat was lost. A nature trail that bordered the area saw a marked decrease in use as diversity of habitat was lost.
<b>Project Partners</b>	South Carolina State Parks, Friends of Huntington Beach State Parks, Coastal Carolina University, NOAA's Community-based Restoration Program, The Nature Conservancy
<b>Funding Sources</b>	South Carolina State Parks, NOAA's Community-based Restoration Program, The Nature Conservancy

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals and Objectives</b>	<p><b>Goal:</b> Restore salt marsh and mud flat habitat through the construction of a tidal inlet and installation of culverts.</p> <p><b>Objectives:</b> Reduce invasion of <i>Phragmites</i> and encourage growth of <i>Spartina</i>; improve water quality and prevent fish kills.</p>
-----------------------------	---

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Breaching of sand dune; installation of culverts.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	The project team decided to restore tidal flow by re-creating a natural inlet with no armoring. Historic aerial photos were used to determine the best location to breach the dune barrier and restore tidal flow. The inlet was designed to receive water only at very high tides in order to not create a barrier to public beach access. This initial action did not provide enough tidal circulation, prompting the project team to take additional action. This second phase involved the replacement of culverts under an adjacent road to facilitate additional tidal exchange.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	USACE and South Carolina OCRM. The permits stipulated no construction during migratory turtle nesting season.
----------------	---



## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	\$66,000 (\$3,300 for construction). Most costs were associated with outreach and education activities.
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	The first phase of construction involved the transplanting of dune vegetation by volunteers. Two bulldozers were then used during low tide periods to push sand out of the way. Maintenance of the channel is part of the Park's plan and is accomplished by Park personnel on an as-needed basis. The original breach was accomplished within a few days. In the second phase, degraded culverts were removed from underneath a Park road and replaced with larger culverts.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Channel and culvert elevation.

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

<b>Scientific Evaluation</b>	A local university added considerably to the project, as several professors from various disciplines took part in extensive pre- and post-monitoring of geology, water quality, vegetation, fish/aquatic life, and birds.
------------------------------	---

## Community Involvement

<b>Volunteer Components</b>	Volunteers took part in movement of plants, scientific monitoring, creation of outreach materials and displays, and implementation of educational activities.
<b>Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach</b>	The project was initiated and overseen by a stakeholder organization, The Friends of Huntington Beach State Park. The project team held several meetings with area citizens and pertinent resource management agencies to ensure success. The project took place in the State Park, so it received many visitors. The project also included development of educational displays and ramps for handicap access. A mini-symposium was held by researchers to demonstrate the project research results to the public.



*The restored tidal inlet at Sandpiper Pond at low tide. Annual maintenance is required to sustain tidal flow and counter sedimentation through the dune system.*

*Photo Credit: SC State Parks*



# Additional Sandpiper Pond Restoration Documents Available Online

## 1 NFWF Five-Star Grants Application for Funding

**Application Form: Five-Star Restoration Matching Grants**

☆☆☆☆☆ SC-001

**AFFILIANT INFORMATION**  
 Organization (to):  
 Tax Status: 201  
 Project Contacts:  
 Project Officer:  
 Title:  
 Fax:  
 E-Mail:

**PROJECT INFO**  
 Project Name: Sandpiper Pond Restoration  
 Project Start Date:  
 Project Location:

**CONGRESSIONAL DISTRICT**  
 Project Start Date:  
 Application State:

**GRANT REQUIREMENTS**  
 Five Star Funds \$:  
 Additional Partner:  
 Total Project Cost:

**PARTNER CONTACTS**  
 Project Partner:  
 Company: Friends of Huntington Beach State Park  
 1. Friends of the  
 2. South Carolina  
 3. Wetlands In  
 4. Wetlands In  
 5. Murrells Inlet  
 6. The Nature C  
 7. U.S. Fish and  
 8. Trust

Can we circulate?

**RESTORATION EVALUATION PLAN**

Project Name: Sandpiper Pond Restoration  
 Project Purpose: Friends of Huntington Beach State Park  
 Project Goal: The overall intent of the habitat restoration effort, in other words, it can be long term and exceed the life of the immediate available funding. The project will restore Sandpiper Pond to a brackish tidal wetlands that will support migratory waterfowl and other wildlife. Restore the coverages of invasive plants such as common reed and cattail. Increase coverage of plants indicative of high quality wet marsh.

**Restoration Objectives:** Reduce the coverages of invasive plants such as common reed and cattail

Parameter order will be measured and in what units: Coverage of plant species

Technique for Measurement (interval, 1-10): aquatic wetland water placement (rod - open - and high-marks)

Baseline (pre-restoration or surface available post-restoration measured value for the restoration parameter): Monitoring of vegetation prior to site opening

Reference listed numerical value for the measured parameter): Monitoring of vegetation of a reference marsh during the duration of the project

Target (desired numerical value desired for the measured parameter): Completion of restoration of the species

Timing (sampling frequency and end date): seasonal pre-restoration (fall and winter 2005) post-restoration (Spring 2006, summer 2006, fall 2006)

**Restoration Objectives:** Increase the diversity of birds utilizing the restored wetland.

Parameter order will be measured and in what units: Diversity of a birdlist, nesting birds, and shorebird using wetland

Technique for Measurement (interval): census of bird sp.

Baseline (pre-restoration or surface available post-restoration measured value for the restoration parameter): 1 species

Reference listed numerical value for the measured parameter): 10 species

Target (desired numerical value desired for the measured parameter): 10 species

Timing (sampling frequency and end date): every two weeks through fall 05

## 2 Restoration Evaluation Plan

The Sun News (Myrtle Beach, SC)  
 Wed, Mar 06, 2005  
 By Kelly Marshall

*Ailing state park inlet ready for restoration by bringing ocean water further inland*

An old inlet at Huntington Beach State Park, now shrunk to the size of small, shallow ponds, will get a new lease on life by this spring.

Sandpiper inlet, once a thriving salt marsh, is almost dry and is overrun with phragmites, an invasive species of plant, said Mike Walker, a nature interpreter at the park.

Most wading birds have deserted the inlet, leaving only a few species that enjoy shallow, stagnant water.

Walker presented plans to restore the inlet, using the cleansing action of oyster shells, during the annual Chowder Talk in Murrells Inlet on Tuesday night. He asked residents and members of Murrells Inlet 2007 to help move sea oysters and other native plants out of harm's way so heavy equipment can shift some sand and open a path to the ocean by April.

It is the first time biologists have attempted to return an inlet to its natural state in South Carolina, although similar projects have taken place in Florida, Walker said.

"We're going to cut a channel through the sand dunes that were put in artificially after Hurricane Hugo," Walker said. "It's basically for wildlife diversity. The Wilcoxian Audubon Society has been trying to do bird counts, and it is appallingly low."

Anna Hyatt Huntington and her husband, Archer Huntington, owned the property before it became the state park.

Anna Huntington chose the name Sandpiper inlet because of the wide variety of birds attracted to the salt marsh.

Time and some mistakes made after Hurricane Hugo, however, caused Sandpiper inlet to close in, Walker said.

## In the News 3

*Ailing state park inlet ready for restoration by bringing water further inland*

**Restoration of an Impounded Freshwater Wetland in Huntington Beach State Park, Murrells Inlet, South Carolina**

R.L. Tauxe  
 Bulletin of Fisheries in Marine Sciences, May 2006

Contact Information:  
 Coastal Carolina University, Department of Marine, Estuarine and Coastal Sciences  
 P.O. Box 261904  
 Conway, SC 29528-0194, United States  
 Phone: (843) 349-4029  
 Email address: rltauxe@coastal.edu

**Abstract:**  
 A thirteen-month study was conducted at Murrells Inlet to assess the effectiveness of various restoration projects including a wetland group ("Friends of Huntington Beach State Park") that had formerly been considered to be closed in 1999 causing the pond to erode. From 1 to April 2005 the restored Sandpiper Pond in the Atlantic restored the pond to its former state as a marsh-flooded wetland increasing the abundance of marine invertebrates and increasing the growth of invasive plant species. Five native plant species such as Spartina and Salicornia grew several species (e.g. fish surveys, plant response restoration). This paper deals exclusively with the water quality and pH that increased significantly in changing some marine channels. The frequency and intensity of post-restoration waterlogging.

**Introduction:**  
 A marsh restoration project was conducted at Sandpiper Pond in Murrells Inlet, SC. This wetland is a tidal inlet from the Atlantic Ocean. It was formerly a salt water pond approximately 55 acres. Natural coastal dynamics in the 1980s have led to the inlet such that the Hugo in 1989. In response, the ecological disturbance and the most significant heavy populations of marsh fern and populations of the Sphagnum redoubled was to meet the salt and tidal water of the inlet. Annual largely disappeared from this site, and sea beach areas have been reduced by several invasive species. From the summer of 1992 a major fish die-off occurred from Sphagnum redoubled in the water. The open water is leading to the conclusion that restoration was not

**PHASE I REPORT**  
**Five-Star Restoration Grant Project**  
 Entitled  
**Sandpiper Pond Restoration of Wetlands and Coastal Habitat At Huntington Beach State Park (2004-007-018)**  
 Project Period 3/01/2004 to 9/06/2005  
 (Phase I Period 3/01/2004 to 4/30/2005)



Submitted by  
 The Friends of Huntington Beach State Park  
 Murrells Inlet, South Carolina  
 James V. Baillio, Project Officer  
 Date: Sept. 15, 2005

## 4 Water Quality Study: Restoration of an Impounded Freshwater Wetland in Huntington Beach State Park, Murrells Inlet, South Carolina

## 5 Phase I Report



Join us for a Mini-Symposium showing the monitoring results of the Five-Year Grant Project,  
**Sandpiper Pond Restoration of Wetlands & Coastal Habitat**  
 November 7, 2005  
 Huntington Beach State Park  
 Education Center  
 Myrtle Beach, SC

**Agenda**

8:00 AM	Registration Site Visit	Joe Shellen, Friends of Huntington Beach State Park, Huntington Beach State Park Staff
12:30 PM	Welcome Comments	Keith Walters & Chris Lovelace, Park Management
1:00 PM	Introductory Remarks	Forrest Schoofield, NCEM Community-Based Restoration Program
1:30 PM	Project Overview	Friends of Huntington Beach State Park and Staff
1:40 PM	Coastal Geology, Landcover Change and Aerial Photography	Scott Martin & Doug Sidles (Engage Wild), Coastal Carolina University
2:00 PM	Water Quality Results	Eric Tosso (Class Libes & Jan Bennett), Coastal Carolina University
2:20 PM	Vegetation Results	Keith Walters & Jan Libes, Coastal Carolina University
2:40 PM	Break	
2:50 PM	Fish & Aquatic Life Results	Richard Martin, Coastal Carolina University
3:10 PM	Bird Counts	Hill Priddy, Wetland Audubon Society
3:30 PM	Discussion of Future Management & Assessment Options	Huntington Beach State Park Staff
4:00 PM	Wrap-up	

**Sandpiper Pond**  
 2001 2005  
 \* Please RSVP to the HBCSP Education Center at 843-235-8755 or [huntingtonbeachrestoration@ncsp.org](mailto:huntingtonbeachrestoration@ncsp.org) by **May 6, 2005**

**6 Symposium Agenda**

- 7 Symposium Presentation: *Water Quality***
- 8 Symposium Presentation: *Vegetation and Soil***
- 9 Symposium Presentation: *Fish and Macrocrustaceans***

**Sandpiper Pond Restoration of Wetlands & Coastal Habitat: Water Quality Results**



Eric Tosso, Joe Bennett, Amanda Hall and Susan Libes  
 Environmental Quality Lab  
 Coastal Carolina University




Sept. 2005  
 outlet cut

**Effects of Inlet Restoration on Vegetation and Soil Processes at Sandpiper Pond**

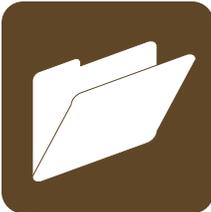


Keith Walters<sup>1</sup>, Jim Luken<sup>2</sup>, Danielle Zoellner<sup>3</sup>  
<sup>1</sup> Department of Marine Science, <sup>2</sup> Department of Biology, <sup>3</sup> Graduate Program in Coastal Marine and Wetland Studies.

**Sandpiper Pond Restoration**  
**Fish and Macrocrustaceans**




These Sandpiper Pond case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio/resources/tidalhydro-sandpiperpond.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio/resources/tidalhydro-sandpiperpond.zip).



# North River Farms Wetland Restoration Project

*Carteret County, NC*



*The creation of tidal creeks through a former wetland that had been converted to agricultural use is just one key component of the large-scale hydrologic restoration of North River Farms in Carteret County, North Carolina.*

*Photo Credit: North Carolina Coastal Federation*





## Background

North River Farms, located in Carteret County, North Carolina, is a 6,000-acre area that was converted from a complex of wetland habitats to a flat and drained agricultural area. In addition to the thousands of acres of lost habitat, the polluted runoff water from North River Farms and an adjacent large-scale corporate farm led to impacts in the nearby estuary, including the closure of one of the region's most productive areas for oyster harvesting.

## Outcomes / Status

The first large phase of this long-term project has been completed, resulting in the restoration of 808 acres of freshwater, tidal and forested wetlands and the protection of 1,183 acres of marsh and woodlands. The second large phase of restoration will use similar innovative practices to restore 2,168 additional acres. Water quality improvements in the lower part of the watershed have also been recorded, resulting in the re-opening of oyster beds for harvest.

*Revegetation efforts at North River Farms commence following the re-contouring and excavation of soils to achieve desired surface elevations.*

Photo Credit: North Carolina Coastal Federation

## Lessons Learned

- The North Carolina Coastal Federation (NCCF) took creative action to help raise money for the project, such as offering a 10-year lease to farmers for a portion of the property (2,168 acres) that will also be eventually restored. Also, a private mitigation bank bought an additional section of land (385 acres) and another parcel (1,435 acres) was bought by private investors to establish a hunting area. Both of these tracts have been placed in the Federal Wetlands Reserve Program.
- NCCF has used \$4,000,000 in grants from NC Clean Water Management Trust Fund to purchase a total of 4,159 acres.

## Project Contact

*Dr. Lexia Weaver, Coastal Scientist*  
North Carolina Coastal Federation  
lexia@nccoast.org  
252-393-8185



For more information, visit the North River Farms Marsh Restoration Project website from the NC Coastal Federation at <http://nccoast.org/restoration-education/north-river-farms.asp>.



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

<b>Project Start / Completion Dates</b>	1999 to present
<b>Historic Tidal Modification (reason)</b>	Land was converted from salt marsh, tidal forest, and upland forest to agriculture. Modifications included grading and filling of area and creation of a large network of drainage ditches.
<b>Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification</b>	6,000 acres of salt marsh, tidal forest, and upland forest habitats were eliminated. Ditches built in the area and surrounding large-scale agriculture led to the transport of polluted water to the nearby estuary, resulting in impacts to oyster beds, including eventual closure.
<b>Project Partners and Funding Sources</b>	Open Grounds Farm; 1804 Wildlife Partners, LLC; Restoration Systems, LLC; NC Clean Water Management Trust Fund; Duke University; NC State University; NC Shellfish Sanitation Section; NC Coastal Land Trust; NC Division of Marine Fisheries; NC Ecosystem Enhancement Program; NC Attorney General's Environmental Enhancement Grant Program; NC Albemarle-Pamlico National Estuary Program; Z. Smith Reynolds Foundation; NC Partners Program; Restore Our Southern Rivers; Restore America's Estuaries; U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; Fish America Foundation; National Fish and Wildlife Foundation; National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration; North American Wetlands Conservation Act Grant Program; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Partners for Fish and Wildlife Program; U.S. Department of Agriculture Natural Resources Conservation Service Wetlands Reserve Program; The Nature Conservancy.

## Goals and Objectives

<b>Goals</b>	Re-establish historic hydrologic patterns. Restoration of tidal creeks, salt marsh and forested wetland habitats. Water quality improvements, including the filtration of runoff from a large, adjacent corporate farm through the newly restored wetlands.
--------------	---

## Project Design

<b>Design Techniques</b>	Excavation and re-contouring of soils; diversion of drainage water back to surface for sheet flow; construction of tidal creeks.
<b>Design Narrative</b>	Design focused on recreating varying landscape elevation changes rather than flat farmland. Ditches were plugged at random to encourage surface flooding. Hydrologic modifications diverted large channels back onto the surface and through a network of re-created creeks. This helped slow water to increase filtration and permeation. Salt marsh and forested wetland were also manually planted with appropriate species.

## Permitting

<b>Permits</b>	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers section 104 permit, obtained through coordination with the North Carolina Coastal Area Management Act (CAMA) permit. A separate Erosion Control/Sedimentation Control Plan was required through the Land Quality Section of the North Carolina Department of Environment and Natural Resources. There were no ESA issues.
----------------	--

*The incorporation of volunteers in restoration is a key component of the North River Farms project. The North Carolina Coastal Federation utilizes full-time education and outreach staff to coordinate these volunteer efforts.*

*Photo Credit: North Carolina Coastal Federation*



## Construction and Maintenance

<b>Total Budget</b>	Over \$4,000,000
<b>Construction Narrative</b>	Construction activities were conducted year round. Weather and its effect on access to the property were the major concerns. Construction involved large-scale movement of soil. Local contracting companies that have experience with the project proponent and restoration helped to ensure smooth implementation. A private consultant was hired to provide close oversight of the construction team.
<b>As-built Monitoring</b>	Elevations of newly contoured/excavated areas.

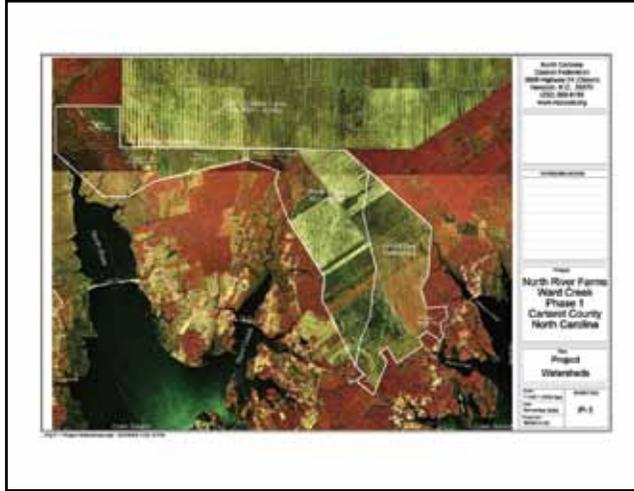
## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

<b>Scientific Evaluation</b>	Water quality; vegetation; water quality effects upon local water bodies and shellfish were studied.
------------------------------	--

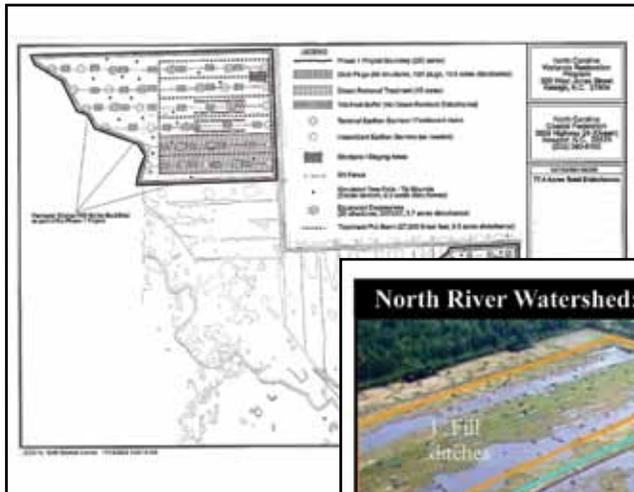
## Community Involvement

<b>Volunteer Components</b>	Students and volunteers played a significant role in the large-scale revegetation practices.
<b>Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach</b>	Despite the remoteness of the site, many groups have visited and learned about this project. The project utilized dedicated staff members for extensive project outreach and education elements. The adjacent corporate farm was brought in as a supporter.





1 North River Farms Project Area Map



2 Phase I Plan Drawings

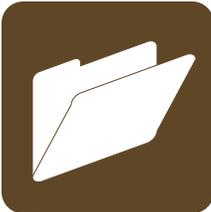


3 Phase I Restoration Design



These North River case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro/portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-northriver.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro/portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-northriver.zip).





# Little River Marsh Restoration Project

*North Hampton, Rockingham County, NH*



*Two 6x12-foot box culverts were installed to bring tidal flow into the marsh and drain stormwater runoff.*

*Photo credit: UNH*

*Scientific monitoring of restoration effectiveness included measures of soil salinity, vegetation, seagrass, fish communities, and birds.*

*Photo Credit: Dave Burdick*



*A volunteer measures the increased soil salinity, which will help reduce the non-native Phragmites australis, seen in the background.*

*Photo credit: Dave Burdick*

## Background

For over a century, Little River salt marsh deteriorated because it lacked a connection to the ocean of sufficient size to allow adequate tidal flow to the marsh. In an attempt to abate local flooding problems, community residents installed a culvert known locally as “the trunk” near the fish houses at Little Boar’s Head in 1890. This was replaced by a 30-inch culvert in 1929 and again with a 48-inch culvert in 1948. All of these early culverts were too small to allow adequate tidal flow into the marsh, resulting in upland flooding and domination of invasive species.

## Outcomes / Status

Installing an appropriately-sized culvert has allowed water to reach a larger part of the marsh surface. Soil salinity has increased dramatically, the number of invasive species is decreasing, and area homes are no longer flooded during extreme tide events. The project team is now working to reduce an unexpected mosquito problem that was created during the restoration.



Additional information can be found online at the Little River project website at [http://www.nh.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/EcosystemRestoration/Little\\_River.html](http://www.nh.nrcs.usda.gov/technical/EcosystemRestoration/Little_River.html).

## Lessons Learned

- Help stakeholders understand the potential negative changes to the system. Here, the red maple swamp on two sides of the system is dying back. It not only looks unappealing to residents, but when a dead tree tips over, increased mosquito breeding habitat is created in the depression at the base of the trees.
- Measure the creek channel dimensions/ cross-section prior to restoration.
- Use GPAC (Global Programme of Action Coalition) monitoring protocols.
- In retrospect, the project team could have improved pre-restoration nekton sampling by using a more systematic approach.
- The reduction in flooding that has resulted from the restoration project has allowed for development of previously un-buildable lots in the study area. It would have been great to conserve or protect those lands prior to construction.

## Project Contact

*Dr. David Burdick*  
University of New Hampshire  
603-862-5129



## Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning

### Project Start / Completion Dates

Spring to Fall 2000 (construction)

### Historic Tidal Modification (reason)

The two main points of water flow to this system were constricted as a result of historic road construction and a second, naturally occurring ephemeral inlet to the Gulf of Maine. In 1890, residents decided to close the inlet permanently, so they installed a culvert about a half mile from the natural mouth of the Little River to increase tidal flow. In 1929, residents replaced the original culvert with 30-inch round culvert. In 1948, residents replaced the 30-inch culvert with 48-inch culvert.

### Impacts of Historic Tidal Modification

Approximately 200 acres of the wetland were lost to historic development, leaving only 180 acres of restorable wetland. Of this area, only 30 acres of marsh remained functional habitat, while the rest experienced invasion by brackish and freshwater vegetation species (both native and exotic, including *Phragmites* and loosestrife). The site was previously a high marsh system with small rivers which converted to red maple forest and scrub when the wetlands were lost. Upland flooding due to the undersized culvert has impacted infrastructure.

### Project Partners

Lead: New Hampshire Coastal Program  
(part of the NH Department of Environmental Services);  
  
Others: National Resource Conservation Service (planning lead),  
Town of North Hampton

### Funding Sources

Natural Resource Conservation Service; National Coastal Wetland Conservation Grant Program; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service; Town of North Hampton; local private donations; NOAA; New Hampshire Department of Environmental Services; the Fuller Foundation; New Hampshire Department of Transportation; Ducks Unlimited.

## Goals and Objectives

### Goals

Reduce local flooding of homes and infrastructure; re-establish salt marsh over 170 acres (including the 30 that still function as a historic salt marsh).

## Project Design

### Design Techniques

Replace the culvert to the Gulf of Maine with a large double box culvert. Replace an upstream culvert with a box culvert. Dredge and re-grade portions of the creek bed and marsh surface.

### Design Narrative

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) and stakeholder input both influenced design. At site one, a small culvert was built to connect two internal parts of the system (80-acre and 40-acre system) and a large double culvert was built to maintain contact with the Gulf of Maine. The main creek had to be dredged and re-graded to enlarge it and ensure that some salt pans remained in the system. USACE constructed several models to show how the design would impact rainfall flooding and storm tide flooding.

## Permitting

### Permits

USACE



## Construction and Maintenance

**Total Budget** \$1,860,000 (\$1,310,000 for construction)

**Construction Narrative** Construction was a challenging process. The small culvert was placed in just a few days, but the large culverts required traffic rerouting and temporary removal of a fish house from the culvert site. Installation of the large culvert required a minimum of six weeks. Multiple contractors were used, one for marsh work and another for installing culverts.

## Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring

**Monitoring Budget** \$25,000 for pre-project monitoring (two years) and \$30,000 for post-project monitoring (a 5-year effort, but reducing over time)

**Scientific Evaluation** The reference site was located six miles north of the project site at an area where the main inlet was changed but the marsh is relatively healthy. Parameters included: tidal range (using water level recorders for two-week periods at both sites before and immediately following construction, one by the small culvert and one by the large outlet); soil salinity (using hand-held optical refractometer); vegetation (using transects for percent cover of marsh species over four years); soil organic matter; seagrass survey (*Ruppia* data was collected pre-construction, but not post); fish sampling (conducted post-construction but there is no good pre-construction data, using ditch nets and lift nets); bird monitoring by Audubon Society (before and after construction).

## Community Involvement

**Volunteer Components** Volunteers helped monitor salinity, fish communities, and marsh vegetation.

**Stakeholder Engagement and Community Outreach** Local buy-in was important but a challenge. A series of public meetings in both towns were led by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and the Natural Resources Conservation Service (for two purposes, one for flooding issues and one for habitat restoration). The dedication ceremony for the project was attended by U.S. Senator Gregg.



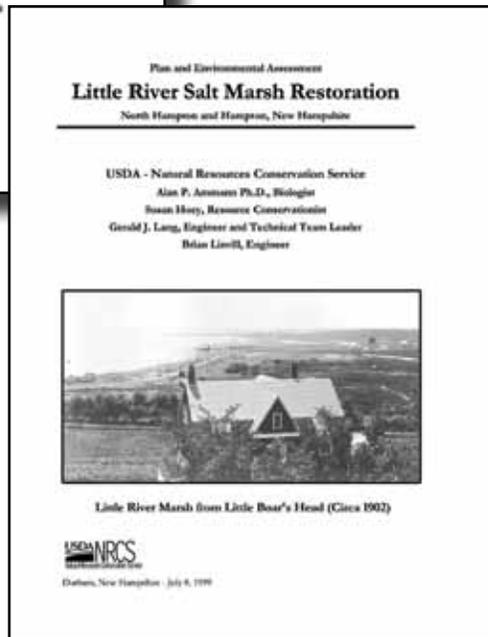
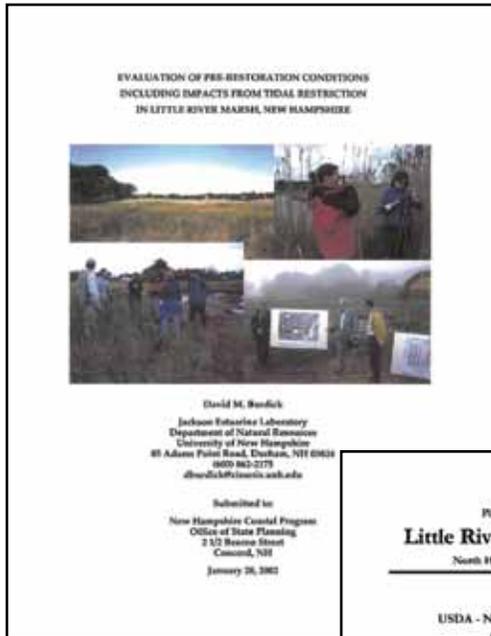
*The main tidal creek in the Little River Marsh required dredging and regrading to allow for adequate tidal flow into the system.*

*Photo Credit: Dave Burdick*



# Additional Little River Marsh Restoration Documents Available Online

## 1 Evaluation of Pre-Restoration Conditions



## 2 Plan and Environmental Assessment for Little River Salt Marsh Restoration



### 3 Project Fact Sheet

**ENVIRONMENTAL Fact Sheet** 

25 Hook Brook, Concord, New Hampshire 03301 • (603) 871-0000 • www.dnr.nh.gov

WMD-CP 14 2005

**NH Salt Marsh Restoration: Little River Salt Marsh, N. Hampton**

**Year of Project:** 2000  
**Type of Project:** Tidal Restoration Removal  
**Contractor:** Northeast Wetland Restoration  
**Primary Project Partners:** Town of N. Hampton, Natural Resources Conservation Service, NH Coastal Program  
**Type of Monitoring:** Post Restoration for Phase I and Pre Restoration for Phase II



**Location:** Little River Salt Marsh is located on Route 1A (Ocean Boulevard) in North Hampton, just southwest of Route 111 and just northwest of North Hampton State Beach. The main tidal creek is located at the intersection of Route 1A and Five Road. Parking is available at North Hampton State Beach, however, for volunteer activities, please park at the Langley Historical Conservation Area on Route 111 just before it intersects with Route 1A.

The Little River Salt Marsh is a back barrier marsh lying between Little River's Head in North Hampton and a rocky headland just south of North Shore Road in Hampton. USDA soil maps indicate that originally the marsh was approximately 197 acres in size. Until recently most of the original marsh had been greatly reduced to 100 acres. The amount of healthy salt marsh was only 42 acres.

**Background:** After nearly a decade of partnership efforts, adequate tidal flow has been restored to Little River Salt Marsh. Now, recovery of native marsh habitat can begin and freshwater flooding caused by an inadequate outlet will end.

**The Issue:** Tidal Restoration: For over a century, there has been inadequate salt water flow into the marsh. Little River salt marsh deteriorated because it lacked a connection to the ocean of sufficient size to allow adequate tidal flow in.



Little River Pre-Restoration Aerial - October 2000



These Little River case study materials can be found online at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_portfolio\\_resources/tidalhydro-littleriver.zip](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_portfolio_resources/tidalhydro-littleriver.zip).

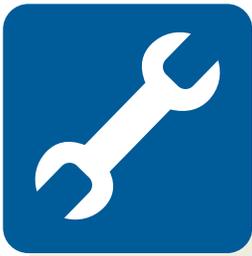


# Toolkit

	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning</b> . . . . .	166
	Toolkit Resource #1: <i>Summary of Recommendations</i> . . . . .	167
	Toolkit Resource #2: <i>Site Hydrology Evaluation Questions</i> . . . . .	167
	Toolkit Resource #3: <i>Project Identification Checklist</i> . . . . .	168
	Toolkit Resource #4: <i>GIS and Online Mapping Resources</i> . . . . .	170
	Toolkit Resource #5: <i>Project Feasibility Questions Worksheet</i> . . . . .	173
	Toolkit Resource #6: <i>Organizations Providing Technical/Financial Support</i> . . . . .	175
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Goals and Objectives</b> . . . . .	176
	Toolkit Resource #7: <i>Summary Recommendations</i> . . . . .	176
	Toolkit Resource #8: <i>Project Goals Worksheet</i> . . . . .	177
	Toolkit Resource #9: <i>Project Objectives Worksheet</i> . . . . .	178
	Toolkit Resource #10: <i>References for Adaptive Management</i> . . . . .	179
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Project Design</b> . . . . .	180
	Toolkit Resource #11: <i>Summary Recommendations</i> . . . . .	180
	Toolkit Resource #12: <i>Recommended (Minimum) Modeling Inputs</i> . . . . .	181
	Toolkit Resource #13: <i>Additional Design Resources</i> . . . . .	181
	Toolkit Resource #14: <i>Modeling Inventories</i> . . . . .	181
	Toolkit Resource #15: <i>Hydrological Model Summary Table</i> . . . . .	182
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Permitting and Regulatory Compliance</b> . . . . .	184
	Toolkit Resource #16: <i>Summary Recommendations</i> . . . . .	185
	Toolkit Resource #17: <i>Federal Regulatory Policies, Citations, and Websites</i> . . . . .	185
	Toolkit Resource #18: <i>U.S. Fish &amp; Wildlife Service ESA Consultation Template</i> . . . . .	186
	Toolkit Resource #19: <i>NOAA Community-based Restoration Program NEPA Checklist</i> . . . . .	190
	Toolkit Resource #20: <i>U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Contact Information</i> . . . . .	195
	Toolkit Resource #21: <i>State Regulatory Agency Contact Information</i> . . . . .	196
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Construction and Maintenance</b> . . . . .	198
	Toolkit Resource #22: <i>Summary Recommendations</i> . . . . .	198
	Toolkit Resource #23: <i>Example Construction Process Outline</i> . . . . .	199
	Toolkit Resource #24: <i>Example Multi-Funder Project Budget</i> . . . . .	200
	Toolkit Resource #25: <i>Match Analysis Tool</i> . . . . .	201
	Toolkit Resource #26: <i>Example Independent Cost Estimates</i> . . . . .	202
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring</b> . . . . .	204
	Toolkit Resource #27: <i>Summary Recommendations</i> . . . . .	204
	Toolkit Resource #28: <i>Monitoring Plan Template</i> . . . . .	205
	Toolkit Resource #29: <i>Monitoring Data Collection Forms</i> . . . . .	206
	Toolkit Resource #30: <i>Example Wildlife Monitoring Datasheet</i> . . . . .	210
	<b>Tools, Tips, and Templates for Community Support</b> . . . . .	212
	Toolkit Resource #31: <i>Summary Recommendations</i> . . . . .	212
	Toolkit Resource #32: <i>NGOs Focusing on Coastal Restoration and         Community Involvement in the Southeastern United States</i> . . . . .	213
	Toolkit Resource #33: <i>Resources for Developing Volunteer Management Programs</i> . . . . .	213

---

**Providing tools, tips, and templates for effective tidal hydrology restoration in the Southeastern United States**



## Tools, Tips, and Templates for: Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning



As described in Chapter 2, **project identification** is the first step in the strategic project planning process. Before spending significant time and resources on a project, restoration practitioners should be able to identify the biological importance and likelihood of restoration success at potential project sites (Battelle 2003, 2010).

An initial feasibility analysis should also be performed that evaluates how the local or state political climate, permits, funding, or community acceptance might support or impede a project.

As project planning proceeds, a team should be assembled that is knowledgeable of the opportunities, complexities, and potential pitfalls of the project. Finally, the development of partnerships and consideration of funding opportunities are also important steps in planning.

### *Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning Resources*

The tools included here are designed to be detailed and user-friendly. In this toolkit chapter you will find the following resources for project identification:

- *Toolkit Resource #1*  
**Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning Summary Recommendations**  
A summary of key recommendations from Chapter 2 of the *Returning the Tide Guidance Manual*, "Project Identification, Feasibility, and Planning."
- *Toolkit Resource #2*  
**Site Hydrology Evaluation Questions**  
Questions for a project team to consider when conducting initial feasibility analysis and planning for hydrology restoration (IWWG 2004).

- *Toolkit Resource #3*  
**Project Identification Checklist**  
Designed for practitioners to use when examining potential restoration sites for critical considerations such as structural alterations that may be impeding tidal flow, ecological incidents that may have occurred in the associated landscape, and any long-term ecological shifts that may have occurred and may indicate ecological impairment.
- *Toolkit Resource #4*  
**GIS and Online Mapping Resources**  
Websites where practitioners can access geographic information system (GIS) data and tools, and interactive maps that may be helpful for planning restoration projects.
- *Toolkit Resource #5*  
**Feasibility Questions Worksheet**  
This worksheet includes important questions for the project team to consider during the restoration project feasibility and planning process.
- *Toolkit Resource #6*  
**Organizations Providing Technical and Financial Support for Restoration**  
Partnerships and funding are critical to the success of any restoration project. Partnerships that the team develops can provide funding, staff support, provision of services at decreased costs, public meeting space, and project advocacy. This resource includes a list of programs that should be considered when the project team develops partnerships.



Electronic versions of these resources are available for download at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html)

## Toolkit Resource #1: Summary Recommendations

1. Plan restoration activities strategically so that regional priorities can be considered, and any stakeholders have opportunities to buy in.
2. There will be times when restoration is best served by opportunistic action.
3. Combine Geographic Information Systems (GIS) technology with in-field observations to garner the most information out of your site identification and characterization.
4. Conduct a feasibility analysis that takes into account land ownership around the project site, building an effective project team, strategic partnerships, and local involvement from the community, agencies, and corporations.
5. Look at the project team and partnerships to determine project feasibility. Consider stakeholder engagement and land ownership. To build an effective project team, carefully consider the appropriate partners and the specific needs of your project.
6. Think about a variety of funding sources, including private contributions, state or federal funding, and other granting mechanisms.

## Toolkit Resource #2: Site Hydrology Evaluation Questions (IWWG 2004)

Issue	Analysis
1. Where can regional baseline hydrologic data (including typical and extreme flood events and their potential) be found?	
2. What are the current hydrologic characteristics of the restoration site?	
3. What are the pre-disturbance hydrologic characteristics at the restoration site (if known)?	
4. What parameters should be measured at the restoration and reference sites?	
5. What factors have altered the hydrologic characteristics of the site (what prevents or restricts water from entering your site)?	
6. Where can reference sites for this wetland type be found in the watershed or nearby?	
7. Will changing the hydrological characteristics of your site potentially affect downstream areas?	
8. What is the relationship between the elevation of the land surface and primary water sources (surface and ground water) for the wetland?	
9. What changes might restore hydrology and the correct relationship between soil and water levels?	
10. What design elements should be included to restore the typical hydrological regime and allow for extreme events?	
11. What soft engineering or bioengineering methods are available to restore tidal hydrology?	
12. What factors might constrain restoring full hydrological functions?	
13. What are likely reasons that the site might fail to reach the project's hydrological goals?	
14. What potential remediation or correction measures are available?	
15. Are the project goals reasonable, feasible, and likely to result in establishing the maximum ecological functioning possible for the site?	
16. What parameters should be monitored? How often should they be monitored and for how long?	

## Toolkit Resource #3: Project Identification Checklist

Structural Alterations			
Name	Type	Date Built	Purpose
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

Ecological Incident			
Incident	Location	Date	Impact
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

Long-Term Ecological Shift			
Shift	Location	Time Period	Impact
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

Comments



## Toolkit Resource #4: GIS and Online Mapping Resources

Name	Web Address	Summary	Highlights	GIS Expertise/ Software Required
<i>Digital Coast</i>	<a href="http://www.csc.noaa.gov/digitalcoast">http://www.csc.noaa.gov/digitalcoast</a>	Provides data, tools, training, and examples for coastal resource management.	Direct access to coastal data sets and tools for GIS professionals and analysts, along with training options and “in action” examples for applying the data and tools to coastal management issues. Data (from NOAA and other sources) includes imagery, high-resolution elevation, hydrography, land cover and more. Tools range from analysis tools, such as the Habitat Priority Planner, to data manipulation tools, such as the LIDAR Data Handler.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data and most tools. This requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats. Some of the tools do not require GIS software or expertise.
<i>NOAA Tides and Currents: Observational Data Interactive Navigation</i>	<a href="http://tidesandcurrents.noaa.gov/gmap3">http://tidesandcurrents.noaa.gov/gmap3</a>	Distributes tide, current, water level and other coastal oceanographic data.	Interactive map of tide gauge stations provides access to tide data, tide predictions, sea level trends, and more.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. No desktop software is required.
<i>Regional Ecosystems Data Management</i>	<a href="http://ecowatch.ncddc.noaa.gov">http://ecowatch.ncddc.noaa.gov</a>	Provides access to data and interactive maps, including management boundaries data, habitat data, nautical charts, observations data and model analyses.	Through “Access Data,” a user can conduct a spatial or text search and view results of related data sets, documents, or presentations on the map. Search results include direct links to the information resource as well as contact information. “GIS Mapping” includes access to interactive maps, many with a southeastern U.S. focus.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats).
<i>NOAA National Geophysical Data Center (NGDC) Bathymetry, Topography, and Relief Archive</i>	<a href="http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/mgg/bathymetry/relief.html">http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/mgg/bathymetry/relief.html</a>	Archives and distributes bathymetry, topography, and relief data and tools.	Maps, data, and tools available for download /FTP; some can be ordered in hard copy or on disc.	Online mapping offered for browsing and viewing some of the data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data and tools (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats).
<i>NOAA's Essential Fish Habitat Mapper and GIS Data Inventory</i>	<a href="http://sharpfin.nmfs.noaa.gov/website/EFH_Mapper/map.aspx">http://sharpfin.nmfs.noaa.gov/website/EFH_Mapper/map.aspx</a>	Allows users to visualize, query, and download GIS layers representing essential fish habitat (EFH) and habitat areas of particular concern (HAPCs).	Provides information on important fisheries habitats and enables Federal agencies to determine whether actions adversely impact EFH or HAPCs. Produces maps and text descriptions by geographic area. A GIS inventory, organized by region, is also available with links to download data. Southeast and Gulf of Mexico are included.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats).
<i>Gulf of Mexico Regional Collaborative</i>	<a href="http://www.gomrc.org/tools.html">http://www.gomrc.org/tools.html</a>	Displays spatial data on tidal wetlands, seagrasses, and oyster beds through interactive maps. Initial pilot area is Mobile Bay, AL. Includes links to search, visualization and analysis tools.	The Conceptual Model Explorer tool allows users to browse data sets by ecosystem stressor and processes. The Restoration Prioritization Toolbox uses GIS modeling based on the conceptual models and can help evaluate system stressors and inform restoration management strategies based on current and past habitat distribution.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to run some of the downloadable tools (some require knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats).

Name	Web Address	Summary	Highlights	GIS Expertise/ Software Required
<i>National Estuaries Restoration Inventory</i>	<a href="http://neri.noaa.gov">http://neri.noaa.gov</a>	Provides an interactive map of examples of planned and implemented restoration projects in the coastal U.S.	Allows users to review case studies of completed restoration projects or to build upon restoration activities that may be near a restoration site of interest.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. No desktop software is required.
<i>NOAA's nowCOAST</i>	<a href="http://nowcoast.noaa.gov">http://nowcoast.noaa.gov</a>	Designed to be a planning aid for recreational and commercial mariners, coastal managers, HAZMAT responders, marine educators, and researchers to discover and display real-time coastal information.	Web-based mapping portal to real-time coastal observations and NOAA Forecasts. Runs continuously and is routinely monitored to provide real-time observational data to the public via the Web.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. No desktop software is required.
<i>National Estuarine Reserve System: System-wide Monitoring Program</i>	<a href="http://www.nerrs.noaa.gov/RCDefault.aspx?ID=18">http://www.nerrs.noaa.gov/RCDefault.aspx?ID=18</a>	Provides long-term and real-time data on water quality, meteorological, and nutrient parameters.	Spatial search function allows browsing of packaged data analyses or the Get Data link can be used for downloading data that is viewable in Google Earth or other GIS software.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats), but can be viewed in spreadsheet format.
<i>NOAA National Ocean Service (NOS) Data Explorer</i>	<a href="http://oceanservice.noaa.gov/dataexplorer">http://oceanservice.noaa.gov/dataexplorer</a>	Serves as a portal to many NOS geospatial data sets and tools by searching an FGDC metadata catalog documenting all NOS geospatial/GIS data using an interactive mapping interface.	Site is geared toward directing users to downloadable data. "What's New" feature allows user to see recent additions to the portal or updates of existing NOAA data sets via RSS feeds such as Environmental Sensitivity Index (ESI) data or geodetic control points.	Online mapping capabilities offered for locating and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats). Some of the geospatial data are available in pdf, jpeg, or other more common/standard formats for printable maps (does not require GIS software or expertise).
<i>Ecosystem-based Management Tools Network</i>	<a href="http://www.ebmtools.org">http://www.ebmtools.org</a>	Provides access to, descriptions of, and training on a wide variety of analysis, monitoring, and decision support tools for coastal and marine environments	On-line database of tools with links for accessing individual tools. Not all tools are GIS-based.	Online searchable database. Desktop software and varying levels of GIS knowledge are required for using some of the downloadable tools.

## Toolkit Resource #4: GIS and Online Mapping Resources (continued)

Name	Web Address	Summary	Highlights	GIS Expertise/ Software Required
<i>Climate Ready Estuaries Coastal Toolkit</i>	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/cre/toolkit.html">http://www.epa.gov/cre/toolkit.html</a>	Provides resources for estuaries and coastal programs interested in learning about climate change impacts and adaptation.	Listing with links to coastal vulnerability and adaptation tools, and to find data. Not all tools and data are GIS-based.	Online browsing of links. Desktop software and varying levels of GIS knowledge are required for using some of the downloadable tools.
<i>Esri Data Resources</i>	<a href="http://www.geography.network.com/data/clearinghouses.html">http://www.geography.network.com/data/clearinghouses.html</a>	Provides links to a range of data clearinghouses.	This site has search and browse functions by content theme to access some of the more useful websites or clearinghouses offering geographic data.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats).
<i>Geospatial One Stop (GOS) Portal</i>	<a href="http://www.geodata.gov">http://www.geodata.gov</a>	Facilitates data discovery, access, and visualization through search of published metadata. Contains over 10,000 metadata records for Live Data and Maps, Documents, Downloadable Data, Applications and more.	National data sets organized into categories (e.g. Hydrology category) allows for more efficient browsing, particularly if user doesn't have a specific data set in mind. Search feature enables user to find higher resolution data sets and to filter results by type (e.g. documents, downloadable data, live data, etc.).	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats).
<i>Data.gov</i>	<a href="http://www.data.gov">http://www.data.gov</a>	Provides access to U.S. Federal Executive Branch datasets.	This application offers data searching in three ways: through the "raw" data catalog, using tools, and through the geodata catalog. Click on the name of a dataset to view additional metadata for that dataset.	Online mapping capabilities offered for browsing and viewing data. Desktop software is required to use downloadable data (this requires some knowledge of GIS and familiarity with spatial data formats).

## Toolkit Resource #5: Project Feasibility Questions Worksheet

Issue	Analysis
<b>Landownership</b>	
<p><i>Is the land privately or publicly owned?</i></p> <p><i>Are owners willing participants?</i></p> <p><i>Are owners willing to sell?</i></p> <p><i>Is adjacent land privately or publicly owned?</i></p> <p><i>Are adjacent landowners supportive?</i></p> <p><i>Is there nearby public or private infrastructure?</i></p> <p><i>Will the project impact that infrastructure?</i></p> <p><i>Will land ownership restrict access or activities?</i></p>	
<b>Project Team</b>	
<p><i>Is the team representative/interdisciplinary?</i></p> <p><i>Is the team adaptive?</i></p> <p><i>Is the team ready to move forward?</i></p>	
<b>Local Involvement</b>	
<p><i>What is the project influence area/ geographic extent?</i></p> <p><i>Have you consulted project stakeholders?</i></p> <p><i>Have you shared preliminary goals and objectives with the project stakeholders?</i></p>	

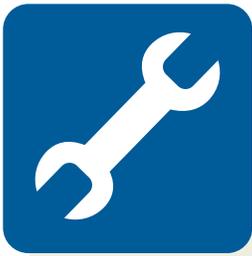
*Toolkit Resource #5:*  
**Project Feasibility Questions Worksheet** *(continued)*

Issue	Analysis
<b>Partnerships</b>	
<p><i>What local, state, or federal partners can provide technical support?</i></p> <p><i>What local, state, and federal partners can provide cash or in-kind services?</i></p> <p><i>What agencies have site-specific data that can inform your project?</i></p> <p><i>What organizations have in-house staff or equipment to facilitate the project?</i></p> <p><i>What private companies have a reputation for supporting local restoration efforts?</i></p>	
<b>Funding</b>	
<p><i>What are the funding needs?</i></p> <p><i>What are the potential sources?</i></p> <p><i>What funding strategies should be considered?</i></p>	
<b>Regulation and Permitting</b>	
<p><i>What permits will be required?</i></p> <p><i>What is the general time frame for the permitting process?</i></p>	

Toolkit Resource #6:

**Organizations Providing Technical and Financial Support for Restoration**

Program	Web Address
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration	<a href="http://www.noaa.gov">http://www.noaa.gov</a>
NOAA Restoration Center Community-based Restoration Program	<a href="http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/funding/crp.html">http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/funding/crp.html</a>
Estuary Restoration Act	<a href="http://www.era.noaa.gov">http://www.era.noaa.gov</a>
U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service	<a href="http://www.fws.gov">http://www.fws.gov</a>
Partners for Fish and Wildlife	<a href="http://www.fws.gov/partners/">http://www.fws.gov/partners/</a>
National Coastal Wetlands Conservation Grant Program	<a href="http://www.fws.gov/coastal/coastalgrants">http://www.fws.gov/coastal/coastalgrants</a>
Environmental Protection Agency	<a href="http://www.epa.gov">http://www.epa.gov</a>
Wetlands, Oceans, and Watersheds Program	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/owow">http://www.epa.gov/owow</a>
National Estuary Program	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/nep">http://www.epa.gov/nep</a>
U.S. Department of Agriculture	<a href="http://www.usda.gov">http://www.usda.gov</a>
Natural Resources Conservation Service	<a href="http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/partners">http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/partners</a>
Non-governmental Organizations	
Corporate Wetlands Restoration Partnership	<a href="http://www.cwrp.org">http://www.cwrp.org</a>
Ecotrust	<a href="http://www.ecotrust.org/wwri/">http://www.ecotrust.org/wwri/</a>
Fish America Foundation	<a href="http://www.fishamerica.org/grants">http://www.fishamerica.org/grants</a>
Gulf of Mexico Foundation	<a href="http://www.gulfmex.org/restoration.htm">http://www.gulfmex.org/restoration.htm</a>
National Fish and Wildlife Foundation	<a href="http://www.nfwf.org/grants">http://www.nfwf.org/grants</a>
Restore America's Estuaries	<a href="http://www.estuaries.org">http://www.estuaries.org</a>
Southeast Aquatic Resources Network	<a href="http://southeastaquatics.net/opportunities">http://southeastaquatics.net/opportunities</a>
The Nature Conservancy	<a href="http://www.nature.org/initiatives/marine/">http://www.nature.org/initiatives/marine/</a>



## Tools, Tips, and Templates for: Goals and Objectives



**Goals and objectives** (G&Os) are the foundation for all restoration projects. Developing restoration G&Os entails careful consideration of site-specific characteristics. Often goals and objectives are shaped not only by the ecological conditions at the site but also by stakeholder interests. Identification of G&Os directly informs the project design, construction, and scientific evaluation and allows for a more efficient and focused restoration process.

### Goals and Objectives Resources

The tools included here are designed to be detailed and user-friendly. In this toolkit chapter you will find the following resources for determining project goals and objectives:

- *Toolkit Resource #7*  
**Goals and Objectives Summary Recommendations**  
A summary of key recommendations from Chapter 3 of the *Returning the Tide Guidance Manual*, "Goals and Objectives".

- *Toolkit Resource #8*  
**Project Goals Worksheet**  
Provides a list of common goals for tidal hydrology restoration projects, as well as space for the project team to define their own project goals.
- *Toolkit Resource #9*  
**Project Objectives Worksheet**  
Provides a list of common tidal hydrology restoration project objectives, as well as space for the project team to define their own objectives.
- *Toolkit Resource #10*  
**References for Adaptive Management**  
A list of useful resources for understanding and applying adaptive management to restoration projects.



Electronic versions of these resources are available for download at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html)

### Toolkit Resource #7: Summary Recommendations

1. Refer to project goals and objectives during all phases of project implementation to help set priorities and intended project outcomes.
2. Develop goal statements that include ecological or biological target(s) and incorporate practical planning considerations that are achievable.
3. Make goals statements simple, clear, and concise.
4. Do not define goals too narrowly.
5. Use project objectives to define more specifically the actions that will be taken to achieve a specific target goal.
6. Consider a range of factors (ecological function, community values, stakeholder interest, cost, etc.) and their impact on project design and implementation to develop achievable goals.
7. Consult regional planning documents when developing project goals and objectives.

## Toolkit Resource #8: Project Goals Worksheet

Common Goals for Tidal Hydrology Restoration Projects		Your Project Goals
<i>Re-establish...</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a tidally influenced salt marsh</li> <li>• tidal influence through a barrier (i.e., levee)</li> <li>• hydrologic connectivity between habitat types</li> </ul>	
<i>Restore...</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• historic habitat type</li> <li>• historic habitat functions</li> </ul>	
<i>Improve...</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• water quality</li> <li>• tidal circulation/flow/exchange</li> <li>• aesthetic qualities</li> <li>• habitat resilience/longevity/sustainability</li> </ul>	
<i>Provide...</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• recreational opportunities/access</li> <li>• habitat capable of supporting fisheries species</li> <li>• habitat for avifauna</li> </ul>	
<i>Decrease...</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• freshwater flooding of private property and infrastructure</li> </ul>	
<i>Stabilize...</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dredge material for marsh creation</li> </ul>	
<i>Adapt for...</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sea level rise by allowing for habitat migration OR creating mosaic habitats</li> </ul>	

## Toolkit Resource #9: Project Objectives Worksheet

Common Objectives for Tidal Hydrology Restoration Projects	Your Project Objectives
<p><i>Reduce...</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Epiphytic cover on seagrasses to levels similar to reference seagrass meadows</li> <li>• Shoreline erosion by 90%</li> </ul>	
<p><i>Achieve...</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tidal flooding of the marsh at a periodicity and depth comparable to nearby reference marshes (e.g., semi-diurnal, 0.4 m)</li> <li>• Resident fish density (e.g., X fish/m<sup>2</sup>) and communities similar to nearby reference system</li> <li>• Appropriate natural vegetation community or percent cover (e.g., 80% cover)</li> <li>• Sediment characteristics capable of supporting appropriate vegetation community (e.g., pore water salinity (e.g., X ppt), organic matter (e.g., X %DOM), or nutrients (e.g., X mg/L Nitrogen)</li> <li>• Benthic community composition similar to reference site</li> </ul>	
<p><i>Improve...</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dissolved oxygen levels to those similar to nearby reference marshes (e.g., X mg/L)</li> <li>• Groundwater quality (e.g., X mg/L Nitrogen)</li> <li>• Public access for low-impact activities such as hiking and kayaking (e.g., 3 access points)</li> <li>• Community stewardship through hands-on volunteer activities (e.g., 4 volunteer activities/ year; target 200 volunteers)</li> </ul>	
<p><i>Create or enhance...</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avifauna habitat suitable for nesting shorebird foraging and nesting (e.g., 2 acres intertidal foraging area; minimum 25 roosting trees)</li> </ul>	
<p><i>Manage/control/stabilize...</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Invasive species to X percent cover</li> <li>• Stormwater input (e.g., reduce the rate and quantity of runoff to 20% of pre-construction level)</li> </ul>	

## Toolkit Resource #10: References for Adaptive Management

- Gunderson, LH, CS Holling, and SS Light. 1995. *Barriers and bridges to the renewal of ecosystems and institutions*. Columbia University Press, New York, NY, USA.
- Holling, CS, Ed. 1978. *Adaptive environmental assessment and management*. John Wiley, New York, NY, USA.
- Steyer, GD, and DW Llewellyn. 2000. Coastal Wetlands Planning, Protection, and Restoration Act: a Programmatic Application of Adaptive Management. *Ecological Engineering* 15(3-4): 385-395.
- Thom, RM. 2000. Adaptive Management of Coastal Ecosystem Restoration Projects. *Ecological Engineering* 15: 365-372.
- Thom, RM. 1997. System-development matrix for adaptive management of coastal ecosystem restoration projects. *Ecological Engineering* 8: 219-232.
- Walters, CJ. 1986. *Adaptive management of renewable resources*. McMillan, New York, NY, USA.
- Walters, CJ, and R Holling. 1990. Large-Scale Management Experiments and Learning by Doing. *Ecology* 71: 2060-2068.
- Walters, C. 1997. Challenges in adaptive management of riparian and coastal ecosystems. *Conservation Ecology* [online] 1(2): 1.



## Tools, Tips, and Templates for: Project Design



The **design phase** of the project is initiated when the project site has been determined and the restoration goals and objectives defined. The design phase will evaluate the potential range of restoration techniques capable of achieving the desired project outcomes. Design options should be continually evaluated against the project goals and objectives.

### Goals and Objectives Resources

The tools included here are designed to be detailed and user-friendly. In this toolkit chapter you will find the following resources for the project design process:

- *Toolkit Resource #11*  
**Project Design Summary Recommendations**  
A summary of key recommendations from Chapter 4 of the *Returning the Tide Guidance Manual*, "Project Design."
- *Toolkit Resource #12*  
**Recommended Modeling Inputs**  
Hydrologic model development requires site specific data/inputs in order to yield accurate outputs/predictions. This resource outlines the data inputs needed to develop numerical hydrology models for project design.

- *Toolkit Resource #13*  
**Additional Design Resources**  
A list of resources offering valuable and detailed information on a range of design techniques applicable to site specific conditions.
- **Toolkit Resource #14: Modeling Inventories**  
A list of websites providing information on a wide variety of available modeling software.
- **Toolkit Resource #15: Hydrological Model Summary Table**  
Web resources for information on a wide variety of available modeling software.



Electronic versions of these resources are available for download at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html)

### Toolkit Resource #11: Summary Recommendations

1. Know your site. Understand important ecological and physical characteristic (historic and current).
2. Develop a site base map as this will aid in design and monitoring.
3. Remember that the optimal design still must be feasible to implement.
4. Give preference to low-maintenance (passive) strategies when possible.
5. Evaluate a range of design strategies and techniques.
6. Consider sea level rise. Strive to restore a mosaic of habitats at elevations that account for sea level rise, where possible.
7. Increase habitat edge where possible (islands, sinusoidal creeks/waterways, etc.).
8. Determine the model needed based on project specifics. Approach modelers for their opinion on best type for your project.

## Toolkit Resource #12: Recommended (Minimum) Modeling Inputs

Input	Details / Examples
Water pulsing events	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tidal periodicity (Daily)</li> <li>Normal storm events (Weekly)</li> <li>Average river floods (Annual)</li> <li>Major storms (5 to 10 years)</li> <li>Major river flooding (50 to 100 years)</li> <li>River switching (1000 yrs)</li> </ul>
Bathymetric data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Surveys with sufficient data to estimate volumetric capacity</li> <li>Surveys with sufficient data to identify sites where flow may be altered/interrupted</li> </ul>
Topographic data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Surveys with sufficient data to identify locations of water sources (i.e. creeks)</li> <li>Surveys with sufficient data to identify areas of flood concern (i.e. infrastructure)</li> </ul>
Average conditions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rainfall</li> <li>Evaporation</li> <li>Runoff</li> </ul>
Predicted or relative sea level rise	Account for... <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sea level rise</li> <li>Subsidence</li> <li>Levee replacement, etc.</li> </ul>

## Toolkit Resource #13: Additional Design Resources

Resource	Web Address
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers: Tidal Hydraulics: Engineering Manual	<a href="http://140.194.76.129/publications/eng-manuals/em1110-2-1607/entire.pdf">http://140.194.76.129/publications/eng-manuals/em1110-2-1607/entire.pdf</a>
U.S. Department of Transportation: Tidal Hydrology, Hydraulics, and Scour at Bridges	<a href="http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/engineering/hydraulics/hydrology/he25.cfm">http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/engineering/hydraulics/hydrology/he25.cfm</a>
Federal Emergency Management Agency: Coastal Construction Manual	<a href="http://www.fema.gov/rebuild/mat/fema55.shtm">http://www.fema.gov/rebuild/mat/fema55.shtm</a>
NOAA Tides and Trends: Sea Levels Online	<a href="http://tidesandcurrents.noaa.gov/sltrends/sltrends.shtml">http://tidesandcurrents.noaa.gov/sltrends/sltrends.shtml</a>

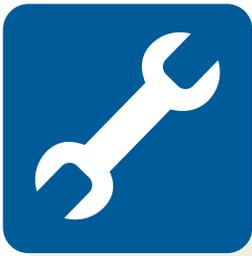
## Toolkit Resource #14: Modeling Inventories

Inventory	Web Address
Hydrology and Statistical Software	<a href="http://www.spatialhydrology.com/software_hydrostat.html">http://www.spatialhydrology.com/software_hydrostat.html</a>
Scientific Software Group	<a href="http://www.scisoftware.com/">http://www.scisoftware.com/</a>
Boss International	<a href="http://www.bossintl.com/">http://www.bossintl.com/</a>
Environmental Modeling Systems, Inc.	<a href="http://www.ems-i.com/Software/software.html">http://www.ems-i.com/Software/software.html</a>
U.S. Geological Survey	<a href="http://water.usgs.gov/nrp/models.html">http://water.usgs.gov/nrp/models.html</a>

## Toolkit Resource #15: Hydrological Model Summary Table

Software	Description	Output
HEC-RAS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Performs one-dimensional steady flow, unsteady flow, and sediment transport/mobile bed computations;</li> <li>Performs water temperature modeling.</li> </ul>	Water level Water temperature
HEC-HMS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Simulates precipitation-runoff processes.</li> <li>Applies to a wide range of geographic areas.</li> <li>Ranges in applications from large river basin water supply and flood hydrology to small urban or natural watershed runoff.</li> </ul>	Flow
WSP-2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Computes water surface profiles in open channels.</li> <li>Estimates head loss at restrictive sections, including roadways with either bridge openings or culverts.</li> <li>Limits of 15 profiles and 50 cross-sections maximum.</li> </ul>	Water level
TR20	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provides hydrologic analyses of a watershed under present conditions.</li> <li>Consists of peaks and/or flood hydrographs output.</li> <li>Uses the unit hydrograph, drainage areas, times of concentration, and SCS runoff curve numbers.</li> </ul>	Flow
RMA2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Consists of two-dimensional, depth averaged, finite element hydrodynamic numerical model.</li> <li>Computes water surface elevations and horizontal velocity components for subcritical, free-surface flow fields.</li> </ul>	Water level
RMA4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accommodates all hydrodynamic options available in RMA2 (see above).</li> <li>Reads RMA2 hydrodynamic solution and a TABS geometry as input.</li> <li>Calculates advective diffusion equations.</li> </ul>	Constituent Transport
HEC-6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Calculates water surface and sediment bed surface profiles.</li> <li>Computes interaction between sediment material in the streambed and the flowing water-sediment mixture.</li> </ul>	Sediment (concentration)
SED2D	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Computes sediment loadings and bed elevation changes.</li> <li>Uses hydrodynamic solution computed by RMA2 (See above).</li> </ul>	Sediment (concentration)





## Tools, Tips, and Templates for: Permitting and Regulatory Compliance



Prior to construction, projects that have the potential to alter existing physical and ecological conditions, federally managed fish and invertebrates, or protected species under the Endangered Species Act are subject to regulatory review by federal, state, or local natural resource agencies.

Even beneficial barrier removal projects intended to increase tidal circulation patterns are required to undergo this process to ensure the project serves public interest while balancing a diverse set of physical, ecological, and socioeconomic criteria.

Restoration project teams should be sure to account for permitting cost and time required when planning and implementing tidal hydrology restoration projects.

### Permitting and Regulatory Compliance Resources

The tools included here are designed to be detailed and user-friendly. In this toolkit chapter you will find the following resources for navigating permitting and regulatory compliance:

- **Toolkit Resource #16**  
**Permitting and Regulatory Compliance Summary Recommendations**  
A summary of key recommendations from Chapter 5 of the *Returning the Tide Guidance Manual*, "Permitting and Regulatory Compliance."
- **Toolkit Resource #17**  
**Federal Regulatory Policies, Citations, and Websites**  
The project team will need to be familiar with the federal regulatory policies below when preparing to submit project designs for permit review and approval. All these policies can affect project design, construction, and completion.

- **Toolkit Resource #18**  
**U.S. Fish & Wildlife Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7 Consultation Template**  
The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service administers ESA review for freshwater and terrestrial species. Under Section 7 of ESA, federal agencies cannot issue a permit for activities that adversely affect threatened or endangered species or their critical habitat. If a tidal hydrology project receives federal funding, the project team may be asked the types of questions included in this template to help federal staff determine how and to what degree the associated activities may impact endangered species.
- **Toolkit Resource #19**  
**NOAA Community-based Restoration Program National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) Checklist**  
NEPA requires that the environmental impacts of proposed federal actions be considered. If a tidal hydrology project receives federal funding, the project team may be asked the types of questions included in this template to help federal staff determine any potential environmental impacts.
- **Toolkit Resource #20**  
**U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Contact Information**  
A list of physical and web addresses for the South Atlantic, Mississippi, and Southwest Divisions of the Army Corps of Engineers.
- **Toolkit Resource #21**  
**State Regulatory Agency Contact Information**  
A list of physical and web addresses for the regulatory agencies in each of the five Southeastern States.



Electronic versions of these resources are available for download at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html)

## Toolkit Resource #16: Summary Recommendations

1. Familiarize yourself with the permitting process in your local jurisdiction, region, and state.
2. Establish local points of contact with permitting agencies. Build positive working relationships to ease communication and increase efficiency.
3. Engage early with the local Army Corps of Engineers and/or state regulatory agency to identify permits.
4. Plan site visits and in-person meetings well in advance. Participate in a joint agency meeting before submitting project plans for permits.
5. Provide background information prior to any formal meetings.
6. Prepare visual aids to communicate project details (PowerPoint, printed maps). Provide electronic files to ease transferability and review.

## Toolkit Resource #17:

### Federal Regulatory Policies, Citations, and Websites

Name	Citation	Web Address
<i>Clean Water Act</i>	Section 404 Public Law 92-500 Codified at Title 33 U.S. Code Pts. 1251 et seq. (2006)	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/lawsregs/laws/cwa.html">http://www.epa.gov/lawsregs/laws/cwa.html</a>
<i>Coastal Zone Management Act</i>	Section 307 Public Law 92-583 Codified at Title 16 U.S. Code Pts. 1451-1466 (2007)	<a href="http://www.fws.gov/laws/lawsdigest/COASZON.HTML">http://www.fws.gov/laws/lawsdigest/COASZON.HTML</a>
<i>National Environmental Policy Act</i>	Public Law 91-190 Codified at Title 42 U.S. Code Pts. 4321-4347 (2006)	<a href="http://www.epa.gov/compliance/nepa/index.html">http://www.epa.gov/compliance/nepa/index.html</a>
<i>Endangered Species Act</i>	Section 7 Public Law 93-205 Codified at Title 7 U.S. Code Pt. 136 and Title 16 U.S. Code Pts. 1531-1544 (2004)	<a href="http://www.fws.gov/laws/lawsdigest/ESACT.HTML">http://www.fws.gov/laws/lawsdigest/ESACT.HTML</a>
<i>Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act</i>	Section 2012 Public Law 109-479 Codified at Title 16 U.S. Code Pts. 1801-1892 (2006)	<a href="http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/magact/">http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/sfa/magact/</a>
<i>Nationwide Permits (27)</i>	n/a	<a href="http://www.usace.army.mil/CECW/Pages/nw_permits.aspx">http://www.usace.army.mil/CECW/Pages/nw_permits.aspx</a>

## Toolkit Resource #18: U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7 Consultation Template

### Template and Guidance on Preparing an Initiation Package for Endangered Species Act Consultation<sup>1</sup>

This document is intended to provide a general template and guidance on the type and detail of information that should be provided to initiate consultation with U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) and/or National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). This document is formatted as a general template you can follow when preparing an initiation package. You may develop one document for projects that affect species under both NMFS and USFWS jurisdiction<sup>2</sup>, but it is often advisable to prepare separate documents for each agency to avoid confusion. This is not intended to be an exhaustive document as specific projects may require more or less information in order to initiate consultation. The amount of information is typically correlated with the complexity of the project and severity of impacts, but in any case, is at least the minimum amount of information necessary to support the conclusions of the document. Also, note that this document contains guidance on the information required to initiate formal consultation procedures with USFWS and/or NMFS. Additional information needs may be identified during consultation. Texts in italics below are examples. Normal text is guidance. A glossary of terms (in bold, italic text) is appended.

Obviously, before you draft an initiation package, before you even know if an ESA consultation will be needed, you will need to have determined which species and critical habitat may be affected by the proposed action and any interrelated or interdependent actions. This “may affect” determination is the first trigger for an ESA section 7 consultation for federal actions. The first step in this determination is usually to request a list from USFWS and NMFS of species and critical habitats that occur in the vicinity of your project. Alternatively, your records may already include this information or you can collect the information from websites maintained by USFWS and NMFS. The next steps include reviewing the action area for proposed action (the determination of action area is described in section III below) and then reviewing the known, expected, or possible occurrence of listed species and critical habitat within the action area. If there is overlap between a species or critical habitat occurrence and the action area, then the action “may affect” the listed species and/or critical habitat. Additional analysis (described in later sections of this document) will allow you to determine whether the exposure of the species or critical habitat to the action is likely to adversely affect the species or critical habitat.

---

<sup>1</sup> Revised November 23, 2007

<sup>2</sup> With some exceptions, generally, marine and anadromous species are under the jurisdiction of NOAA Fisheries Service. Terrestrial species and freshwater aquatic species are under the jurisdiction of USFWS. Sec. 7 Consultation Template – SUBJECT TO REVISION 2

## I. INTRODUCTION

Here is an example of introductory language:

*The purpose of this initiation package is to review the proposed [project name] in sufficient detail to determine to what extent the proposed action may affect any of the threatened, endangered, proposed, or sensitive species and designated or proposed critical habitats listed below. In addition, the following information is provided to comply with statutory requirements to use the best scientific and commercial information available when assessing the risks posed to listed and/or proposed species and designated and/or proposed critical habitat by proposed federal actions. This initiation package is prepared in accordance with legal requirements set forth under regulations implementing Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act (50 CFR 402; 16 U.S.C. 1536 (c)).*

### **Threatened, Endangered, Proposed Threatened or Proposed Endangered Species**

Example language:

*The following listed and proposed species may be affected<sup>3</sup> by the proposed action:*

- *common name (Scientific name) T*
- *common name (Scientific name) E*
- *common name (Scientific name) PT*
- *common name (Scientific name) PE*

This list should include all of the species from the species lists you obtained from USFWS and NOAA Fisheries Service. If it doesn't, include a brief explanation here and a more detailed explanation in your record to help USFWS and NOAA Fisheries Service understand your thought process for excluding a species from consideration.

### **Candidate Species, Sensitive Species and Species of Concern (USFWS only)**

Example language:

*The following candidate species, sensitive species, and species of concern may be affected by the proposed action:*

- *common name (Scientific name) [include state designation, if appropriate]*

Any State-listed species should be included here, if they are not federally listed. Do not forget that the action agency may have additional responsibilities to help prevent these species from becoming listed. Check your agency's guidelines.

### **Critical Habitat**

Example language:

*The action addressed within this document falls within Critical Habitat for [identify species].*

---

<sup>3</sup> This document will discuss making the "may affect" and subsequent determinations in later sections.

## II. CONSULTATION TO DATE

Consultation under the ESA consists of discussions between the action agency, the applicant (if any), and the USFWS and NOAA Fisheries Service. Consultation includes the sharing of information between all parties about the proposed action and related actions, the species and environments affected, and means of achieving project purposes while conserving the species and their habitats. Under the ESA, there can be both formal and informal consultation. The consultation process in each is similar, but formal consultation has statutory timeframes and other requirements (such as the submission of the information in this package). Informal consultation typically concludes after the action agency makes a determination that the action “may affect, but is not likely to adversely affect” listed species or critical habitat and USFWS and/or NOAA Fisheries Service concur with this determination in writing. Formal consultation typically occurs when the action agency makes a determination of “may affect, likely to adversely affect” and concludes when USFWS and/or NOAA Fisheries Service issue a biological opinion. Alternatively, formal consultation can also lead to incorporation of additional protective measures that render the project “not likely to adversely affect” listed species or designated critical habitat.

In this section, summarize any consultation that has occurred thus far. For example, prior to initiating formal consultation or requesting concurrence, agencies and applicants may engage in a period of technical assistance to discuss the project and develop avoidance, minimization, and conservation measures. Identify when consultation was requested (if not concurrent with this document). Be sure to summarize meetings, site visits and correspondence that were important to the decision-making process.

## III. DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPOSED ACTION

The purpose of this section is to provide a clear and concise description of the proposed activity and any interrelated or interdependent actions. The following information is necessary for the consultation process on an action:

1. The action agency proposing the action.
2. The authority(ies) the action agency will use to undertake, approve, or fund the action.
3. The applicant, if any.
4. The action to be authorized, funded, or carried out.
5. The location of the action.
6. When the action will occur, and how long it will last.
7. How the action will be carried out
8. The purpose of the action.
9. A description of any interrelated or interdependent actions, or that none exist to the best of your knowledge.

In other words, describe and specify:

- WHO is going to do the action and under what authority, include the name and office of the action agency and the name and address of the applicant;
- WHAT the project or action is;
- WHERE the project is (refer to attached maps);
- WHEN the action is going to take place, including time line and implementation schedules;
- HOW the action will be accomplished, including the various activities that comprise the whole action, the methods, and the types of equipment used;
- WHY the action is proposed, including its purpose and need; and
- WHAT OTHER interrelated and interdependent actions are known.

Include a clear description of all conservation measures and project mitigation such as avoidance measures, seasonal restrictions, compensation, restoration/creation (on-site and in-kind, off-site and in-kind, on-site and out-of-kind, off-site and out-of-kind), and use of mitigation or conservation banks.

Here are some examples of commonly overlooked items to include in your project description:

- Type of project
- Project location
- Project footprint
- Avoidance areas
- Start and end times
- Construction access
- Staging/laydown areas
- Construction equipment and techniques
- Permanent vs. temporary impacts
- Duration of “temporary” impacts
- Restoration areas
- Conservation measures
- Compensation and set-asides
- Bank ratios and amounts
- Mitigation: what kind and who is responsible?
- Dust, erosion, and sedimentation controls
- Whether the project is growth-inducing or facilitates growth
- Whether the project is part of a larger project or plan
- What permits will need to be obtained

**NEPA Checklist for Projects Funded Under the NOAA Community based Restoration Program**

The purpose of this checklist is to assist the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) in conducting an assessment of potential significant effects that may result from funding or implementing a restoration project, as required by the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA). NOAA will use the answers to these questions to determine the next steps to comply with NEPA. These steps may include documenting consistency with previous environmental analysis (e.g., Programmatic Environmental Assessments, Categorical Exclusions), drafting project specific environmental analysis (e.g., Environmental Assessments, Environmental Impact Statements), and/or initiating consultations with other federal agencies to ensure compliance with regulations (e.g., Essential Fish Habitat, Endangered Species Act, National Historic Preservation Act).

***I. Summary of Significance and Impacts***

Answer each item below. For guidance, see the corresponding CRP NEPA Considerations in the Attachment. Questions 1-10 evaluate the proposal’s significance under NEPA. Question 11 addresses whether the impacts of the proposal are analyzed under the CRP PEA and SPEA. Determine whether the proposed action will:

No	Maybe*	Yes	
___	___	___	1. Have impacts on public health or safety?
___	___	___	2. Affect the unique characteristics of the geographic area?
___	___	___	3. Have impacts on the human environment that are likely to be highly controversial?
___	___	___	4. Have highly uncertain or unique or unknown risks?
___	___	___	5. Establish a precedent for future actions with significant impacts or represent a decision in principle about a future consideration?
___	___	___	6. Have individually insignificant but cumulatively significant impacts?
___	___	___	7. Adversely affect entities listed/eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or cause loss/destruction of significant scientific, cultural, or historic resources?
___	___	___	8. Adversely affect endangered or threatened species, or their critical habitat as defined under the Endangered Species Act of 1973?
___	___	___	9. Violate a Federal, state, or local law for environmental protection?
___	___	___	10. Result in the introduction or spread of a nonindigenous species?
___	___	___	11. Is there any category above for which impacts are not adequately described in PEA or SPEA?

***II. Clarifying Questions***

**1. Is the degree to which the proposed action affects public health or safety significant? Consider the following:**

- *Water Use and Quality*
  - a. Will there be a change to the water supply and/or water table?  
Please address any changes to groundwater, surface water, or any interbasin transfers.
  - b. Will there be any impacts on wastewater disposal?
  - c. Will there be a change to stormwater flow in the area?
  - d. Will there be a change to the location of the floodplain or the depth of flood waters?

- *Geological Resources*
  - a. Is construction on or near any other natural feature that could affect the safety of the public part of this project? (Examples include known active geological faults.)
  - b. Will implementation result directly or indirectly in construction on slopes greater than 15%?
  - c. Will blasting be necessary?
- *Air and Noise Impacts*
  - a. Will air quality be affected?
  - b. Will there be an increase in noise in the area?
- *Energy Resources*
  - a. Will the capacity of any generating facility be changed?
  - b. Will the length or capacity of fuel or transmission lines be changed?
- *Traffic*
  - a. Will implementation change traffic patterns or increase traffic volumes?
- *Contaminants*
  - a. Will implementation result in the use, storage, release and/or disposal of toxic, hazardous, or radioactive materials, or in exposure of people to such materials? (Historical data such as chains of title and tax records can reveal whether activities have taken place there that could have released hazardous, toxic, or radioactive materials into the site, and whether underground storage tanks are likely to be present. Field inspection may reveal evidence of USTs such as vent pipes or fill caps, and evidence of site contamination such as stressed vegetation, soil surface stains, suspicious other possible waste containers, or ponds, pits, sumps or ditches with suspicious odors or smells. Check for evidence of or past history of PCBs, local Superfund sites, asbestos, etc.).
  - b. Will sampling for contaminants be necessary based on the results of your investigation as detailed above?
- *Environmental Justice*
  - a. Is the project likely to have adverse economic/environmental impacts on minority or low income groups, or Native American tribes that are out of proportion with its impacts on other groups?
  - b. Is the project likely to alter the sociocultural character of such a group's community, or religious practices or use of land and other resources?

*If the answer to any of the above questions is yes, is there a significant effect expected? Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA? Include if the effect is negative or beneficial.*

**2. Is the degree to which the proposed action affects unique characteristics of the geographic area significant? Consider the following:**

- Will implementation result in changing the use of park lands, prime farmlands, and/or a floodplain?
- Will implementation alter a wetland? (The project may be altering a wetland if it results in construction on or near hydric soils, wetland vegetation, or other evidence of a wetland)
- Will the project be located on or near ecologically critical areas, such as a wildlife refuge, a designated wilderness, a wild and scenic river, a National Natural Landmark, designated open space, or a designated conservation area; or located on or near an area under study for any such designation?
- Will the proposed action have substantial impacts on biodiversity and/or ecosystem function within the affected area (e.g. benthic productivity, predator-prey relationships, etc.).

*If the answer to any of the above questions is yes, is there a significant effect expected? Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA? Will the project change the use for which the ecologically critical areas above were designated? Why or why not? Include if the effect is negative or beneficial.*

**3. What is the degree to which this project and its impacts on the human environment are likely to be highly controversial?**

- Are there currently any members of the public objecting to this project?
- Is there any sector of the public that has not been fully educated about the benefits and possible adverse impacts of the project?
- Do any of the following have the potential to be highly controversial?
  - a. Ecological impacts
  - b. Aesthetic impacts
  - c. Economic impacts
  - d. Social impacts
  - e. Affects on public health
  - f. Affects on historic sites
  - g. Cultural resource impacts-

*If the answer to any of the above questions is yes, please explain 1) how project proponents plan to educate the public and reduce or relieve the actual or potential controversy or 2) if an individual EA, at a minimum, is needed to address the controversial impacts (required of highly controversial projects).*

**4. What is the degree to which possible impacts on the human environment are highly uncertain or involve unknown risks?**

- Does this project involve new techniques in the field of habitat restoration?
- Does the proposed site have characteristics that make it unique when compared to projects frequently implemented in the field of habitat restoration?
- Are their historic uses of the site that make it likely that contaminants will be uncovered? (Conduct a search of previous deed holders/site uses.)

*If the answer to any of the above questions is yes, please explain what has been done reduce the uncertainty involved in the project. Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA?*

**5. What is the degree to which the proposed project may establish a precedent for future actions with significant impacts or represents a decision in principle about a future consideration?**

- Does funding this project predisposes you toward funding another project in the future?
- Will a change in local zoning or a local ordinance be needed?

*If the answer to either of the above questions is yes, will significant impacts result from future activities? Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA?*

**6. Consider whether the action is related to other actions with individually insignificant but cumulatively significant impacts.**

- Is the project one of a series of projects that together may change the pattern of pollutant discharge, traffic generation, economic change, flood plain, or land use change in the area? Consider other past, present, or reasonably foreseeable future impacts, including those not caused by CRP-funded projects.

*If the answer to the above question is yes, is there a significant effect expected? Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA? Include if the expected effect is negative or beneficial.*

**7. Consider the degree to which the action may adversely affect districts, sites, highways, structures, or objects listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places or may cause loss or destruction of significant scientific, cultural, or historical resources. Loss or destruction may occur through physical alteration or by altering its visual, social, or other characteristics.**

- Is there a building or other structure that is over 45 years old? Will loss or destruction occur?
- Is there a neighborhood or commercial area that may be important in the history or culture of the community? Will loss or destruction occur?
- Is there a known or probable cemetery on site? Will loss or destruction occur?
- Is the project on a rural landscape that may have cultural or esthetic value? Will loss or destruction occur?
- Is the site a place of traditional cultural or spiritual value in the eyes of a Native American group or other community? Will loss or destruction occur? Will the proposed project impede access to such a place?
- Is the site a known archeological site? Will loss or destruction occur?

*If the answer to any of the above questions is yes, please explain what has been done to mitigate such losses. (In addition, if proximity to any of the locations/sites listed are likely to generate controversy, please address this under question 3, above.) Has the State Historic Preservation Office been contacted? Where is the record of consultation with the SHPO filed? Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA?*

**8. Consider the degree to which the action may adversely affect an endangered or threatened species or its habitat that has been determined to be critical under the Endangered Species Act of 1973. Consider the following:**

- Will the project alter a natural ecosystem?
- If yes, are endangered or threatened species, their critical habitat, or a species under consideration for listing present in the area? How have you determined their presence or absence? List the species present.
- If yes, have Section 7 ESA consultations been received from USFWS or NMFS? Where are these documents on file?
- If “likely to adversely affect” was concluded, have sufficient steps been taken to mitigate potential loss? Explain.

*Do the answers above lead you to believe that the degree to which the action may adversely affect listed species is minimal, and will be beneficial in the long term? Are these significant impacts? Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA?*

**9. Consider whether the action threatens a violation of Federal, State, or local law or requirements imposed for the protection of the environment. Consider whether the action is likely to have impacts that would be inconsistent with such authorities as:**

- Archaeological and Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. 469 and 36 CFR Part 800);
- National Historic Preservation Act (16 U.S.C. 470 and 36 CFR Parts 61, 63, 65, 68, 79, and 800);
- Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1251-1387) Permits are required if the project includes a regulated liquid discharge (Section 402 NPDES), or discharge of fill in wetlands or intertidal areas (Section 404);
- Coastal Zone Management Act (15 CFR 930 Subpart D and 15 CFR 923) Federal fishery management actions are required to be in compliance with states coastal zone management plans. Requires a Consistency determination;
- Endangered Species Act (See question 8, above);
- Marine Mammal Protection Act (16 U.S.C. 1631-1421) Prohibits, with certain exceptions, the take of marine mammals in U.S. waters;
- Farmland Protection Policy Act (7 CFR 658) requires Federal agencies to minimize the extent to which Federal programs including technical assistance or financial assistance contribute to the unnecessary and irreversible conversion of important farmland to nonagricultural uses

- Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act applies to fishery management plans, amendments to fishery management plans, and federal fisheries management notices, rules and regulations. The Act stipulates ten National Standards to which fishery conservation and management actions must conform. Section 303 requires essential fish habitat (EFH) descriptions. The agency has guidance for EFH consultations which should be followed. A Fisheries Impact Statement is needed;
- E.O. 11988 (Floodplain management);
- E.O. 11990 (Wetlands protection);
- E.O. 12072 (Development in central business areas);
- E.O. 12898: (Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low Income Populations);
- E.O. 13006 (Priority use of historic properties);
- E.O. 13158 (Marine Protected Areas);
- E.O. 13175 (Consultation and Coordination With Indian Tribal Governments);
- EPA's solid waste management guidelines;
- Occupational Health and Safety Administration (OSHA) noise standards;
- A State Implementation Plan (SIP) under the Clean Air Act;
- Other applicable state, tribal, or local environmental, historic preservation, noise, visual, or social impact ordinances.

*List all documentation showing compliance with the above laws and requirements and where documents are located. Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA?*

**10. Will the Federal action result in the introduction or spread of a nonindigenous species?**

- Are these impacts described in the PEA or SPEA?

## Toolkit Resource #20: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Contact Information

USACE District Office	Contact information
<b>South Atlantic Division</b>	
Wilmington, NC	69 Darlington Ave. Wilmington, NC 28403 Tel: 910-251-4511 <a href="http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/">http://www.saw.usace.army.mil/</a>
Charleston, SC	69A Hagood Ave. Charleston, SC 29403-5107 Tel: 843-329-8044 , 866-329-8187 Fax: 843-329-2332 <a href="http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/">http://www.sac.usace.army.mil/</a>
Savannah, GA	100 W Oglethorpe Ave. Savannah, GA 31401 Tel: 912-652-5279, 912- 652-5770 <a href="http://www.sas.usace.army.mil/">http://www.sas.usace.army.mil/</a>
Jacksonville, FL	701 San Marco Blvd. Jacksonville, FL 32207-8175 Tel: 1-800-291-9405 <a href="http://www.saj.usace.army.mil/">http://www.saj.usace.army.mil/</a>
Mobile, AL	P.O. Box 2288 Mobile, AL 36628-0001 Tel: 251-694-3776 <a href="http://www.sam.usace.army.mil/">http://www.sam.usace.army.mil/</a>
<b>Mississippi Valley Division</b>	
New Orleans, LA	7400 Leake Ave. New Orleans, LA 70118 Tel: 504-862-2257 <a href="http://www.mvn.usace.army.mil/">http://www.mvn.usace.army.mil/</a>
<b>Southwest Division</b>	
Galveston, TX	2000 Fort Point Rd. Galveston, TX 77550 Tel: 409-766-3943 <a href="http://www.swg.usace.army.mil/">http://www.swg.usace.army.mil/</a>

## Toolkit Resource #21: State Regulatory Agency Contact Information

Agency	Contact information
<b>Texas – General Land Office (TXGLO)</b> <a href="http://www.glo.state.tx.us/coastal/cmp.html">http://www.glo.state.tx.us/coastal/cmp.html</a>	
TXGLO: Permit Center (Galveston) <a href="http://www.glo.state.tx.us/psc">http://www.glo.state.tx.us/psc</a>	Texas A&M University-Galveston 200 Seawolf Pkwy., Bldg. 3027 Galveston, TX 77554-1675 Tel: 409-741-4057, 1-866-894-7664 Fax: 409-741-4010
TXGLO: Permit Center (Corpus Christi) <a href="http://www.glo.state.tx.us/psc/">http://www.glo.state.tx.us/psc/</a>	Texas A&M University-Corpus Christi 6300 Ocean Dr., NRC #2800, Unit 5841 Corpus Christi, TX 78412-5841 Tel: 361-825-3050, 866-894-3578 Fax: 361-825-3465
<b>Louisiana – Department of Natural Resources</b> <a href="http://dnr.louisiana.gov">http://dnr.louisiana.gov</a>	
Main Office	617 N Third St. LaSalle Building Baton Rouge, LA 70802 Tel: 225-342-4500 Fax: 225-342-5861
<b>Mississippi – Department of Marine Resources</b> <a href="http://www.dmr.state.ms.us">http://www.dmr.state.ms.us</a>	
Main Office	1141 Bayview Ave. Biloxi, MS 39530 Tel: 228-374-5000, 800-374-3449
<b>Alabama – Department of Conservation and Natural Resources</b> <a href="http://www.outdooralabama.com/public-lands/stateLands/landsCoastal/">http://www.outdooralabama.com/public-lands/stateLands/landsCoastal/</a>	
Main Office	5 Rivers - Alabama's Delta Resource Center 3115 5 Rivers Blvd Spanish Fort, AL 36527 Tel: 251-621-1216
<b>Florida – Department of Environmental Protection (FLDEP)</b> <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/cmp/default.htm">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/cmp/default.htm</a>	
FLDEP: Northwest Office <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/northwest/">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/northwest/</a>	160 Governmental Center Pensacola, FL 32502-5794 Tel: 850-595-8300 Fax: 850-595-8417
FLDEP: Northeast Office <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/northeast/">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/northeast/</a>	7825 Baymeadows Way, Suite B200 Jacksonville, FL 32256-7577 Tel: 904-807-3300 Fax: 904-448-4362
FLDEP: Central Office <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/central/">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/central/</a>	3319 Maguire Blvd., Suite 232 Orlando, FL 32803-3767 Tel: 407-894-7555 Fax: 407-897-2966

Agency	Contact information
<b>Florida – Department of Environmental Protection (FLDEP) - continued</b> <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/cmp/default.htm">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/cmp/default.htm</a>	
FLDEP: Southwest Office <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/southwest/">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/southwest/</a>	13051 N Telecom Parkway Temple Terrace, FL 33637-0926 Tel: 813-632-7600 Fax 813-632-7665
FLDEP: Southeast Office <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/southeast/">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/southeast/</a>	400 North Congress Ave., Suite 200 West Palm Beach, FL 33401 Tel: 561-681-6600 Fax: 561-681-6755
FLDEP: South Office <a href="http://www.dep.state.fl.us/south/">http://www.dep.state.fl.us/south/</a>	2295 Victoria Ave., Suite 364 Fort Myers, FL 33901-3881 Tel: 239-332-6975 Fax: 239-332-6969
<b>Georgia – Department of Natural Resources</b> <a href="http://crd.dnr.state.ga.us/content/displaynavigation.asp?TopCategory=6">http://crd.dnr.state.ga.us/content/displaynavigation.asp?TopCategory=6</a>	
Main Office	1 Conservation Way Brunswick, GA 31520 Tel: 912-264-7218 Fax: 912-262-3143
<b>South Carolina – Department of Health and Environmental Control (SCDHEC)</b> <a href="http://www.scdhec.net/environment/ocrm">http://www.scdhec.net/environment/ocrm</a>	
SCDHEC: Charleston Office (Main)	1362 McMillan Ave., Suite 400 Charleston, SC 29405 Tel: 843-953-0200 Fax: 843-953-0201
SCDHEC: Beaufort Office	104 Parker Dr. Beaufort, SC 29906 Tel: 843-846-9400 Fax: 843-846-9810
SCDHEC: Myrtle Beach Office	104 Parker Dr. Beaufort, SC 29906 Tel: 843-846-9400 Fax: 843-846-9810
<b>North Carolina – Department of Environment and Natural Resources, Division of Coastal Management</b> <a href="http://dcm2.ehnr.state.nc.us">http://dcm2.ehnr.state.nc.us</a>	
Main Office	400 Commerce Ave. Morehead City, NC 28557 Tel: 1-888-4RCOAST dcmfrontdesk@ncmail.net



## Tools, Tips, and Templates for: Construction and Maintenance



Full project implementation involves construction preparation, actual construction, and post-construction management. During the construction phase, the project team will carry out and maintain the tidal hydrology restoration project. Referring back to project goals and objectives during this phase is important for keeping construction on track.

### Construction and Maintenance Resources

The tools included in this section are designed to be detailed and user-friendly. In this toolkit chapter you will find the following interactive resources for construction and maintenance:

- *Toolkit Resource #22*  
**Construction and Maintenance Summary Recommendations**  
A summary of key recommendations from Chapter 6 of the *Returning the Tide Guidance Manual*, "Construction and Maintenance."

- *Toolkit Resource #23*  
**Example Construction Process Outline**  
With typical tasks from pre-construction preparation to post-construction monitoring, as well as suggestions for who should be involved at each stage.
- *Toolkit Resource #24*  
**Example Multi-Funder Project Budget**  
Includes typical budget categories and organization critical to granting agencies (e.g. current expenditures vs. grant funds awarded, match, etc.).
- *Toolkit Resource #25*  
**Match analysis tool**  
To aid project teams discover match scenarios to fulfill grant requirements.
- *Toolkit Resource #26*  
**Example Independent Cost Estimates**  
Includes examples of the different approaches for generating estimates.



Digital versions can be downloaded at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html)

### Toolkit Resource #22: Summary Recommendations

1. Refer to example projects of comparable size and scope to help with estimating costs and writing a statement of work.
2. Provide as much detail in the statement of work as possible, but still allow room for contractors to demonstrate innovation and cost-effectiveness.
3. Require that contractors and the design team visit the site, or have local knowledge of the site, for effective construction design and implementation.
4. Confirm construction details carefully with all parties, such as hydrology requirements, elevations, slopes, substrata, and seeding and planting (if applicable).
5. Be aware of construction challenges in a tidal and saline environment (i.e., tidal regime may limit the timing of construction; salt water may rust metal equipment).
6. Control the footprint of activities as much as possible to limit any unintended secondary impacts of construction.
7. Expect the unexpected – construction oversight and contingency planning are critical.
8. Monitor and maintain construction elements during and after construction. In addition to scientific evaluation of the restoration project, it is important to evaluate engineered structures and make adjustments if necessary.

Toolkit Resource #23:

## Example Construction Process Outline

Construction Stage	Personnel Involved
<i>Pre-Construction Preparation</i>	
1. Develop budget and estimate construction costs	Project Team
2. Draft Statement of Work (SOW)	Project Team
3. Select contractor based on response to SOW (proposal and bid)	Project Team
4. Negotiate with contractor <i>a. Determine cost</i> <i>b. Develop final schedule</i>	Project Team and Contractor
5. Develop construction plans	Contractor with Project Team approval
<i>Implementing Construction Activities</i>	
1. Plant preparation	Contractor with Project Team oversight
2. Site preparation	Contractor with Project Team oversight
3. Construction	Contractor with Project Team oversight
<i>Post-Construction Management</i>	
1. Construction monitoring <i>a. As-built survey</i>	Contractor, Project Team, and/or other expert (Other expert for as-built survey)
2. Construction Maintenance <i>a. Repair</i> <i>b. Plant Replacement</i> <i>c. Invasive species control</i> <i>d. Herbivore/ Predator control</i>	Contractor and/or Project Team

## Toolkit Resource #24: Example Multi-Funder Project Budget

MULTI-FUNDER BUDGET EXAMPLE									
Provided by the NOAA Restoration Center									
Budget Categories	Total Budget	Total Funds Available (Sum of Funders)	Non-Federal Funding Sources		Federal Funding Sources		Unmet Need	Costs to Date	Remaining Funds In Hand
			Funder A confirmed	Funder B confirmed	Funder C confirmed	Funder D pending			
<b>Personnel/Salary</b>	\$9,900	\$9,900	\$9,900				\$0	\$2,475	\$7,425
Person A (30 hours @ \$30/hr)	\$900								
Person B (150 hours @ \$60/hr)	\$9,000								
<b>Fringe Benefits</b>	\$2,970	\$3,000	\$3,000				-\$30	\$740	\$2,260
<b>Travel</b>	\$1,000	\$1,000			\$1,000		\$0	\$213	\$787
<b>Equipment Purchase</b>	\$0	\$0					\$0	\$0	\$0
<b>Supplies</b>	\$1,000	\$1,000			\$1,000		\$0	\$234	\$766
<b>Contractual</b>	\$160,500	\$159,000	\$54,000	\$50,000	\$30,000	\$25,000	\$1,500	\$36,000	\$123,000
Pre-construction monitoring	\$36,000								
Contractor Mobilization	\$25,000								
Earth-moving	\$18,000								
Culvert installation	\$28,500								
Vegetation planting	\$20,000								
As-built monitoring	\$18,000								
Contractor Demobilization	\$15,000								
<b>Total Direct Costs</b>	\$175,370	\$173,900	\$66,900	\$50,000	\$32,000	\$25,000	\$1,470	\$39,662	\$134,238
<b>Overhead/Indirect Costs (15%)</b>	\$26,306	\$23,100	\$8,100	\$7,500	\$2,500	\$5,000	\$3,206	\$7,900	\$15,200
<b>Total</b>	\$201,676	\$197,000	\$75,000	\$57,500	\$34,500	\$30,000	-\$4,676	\$47,562	\$149,438

## Toolkit Resource #25: Match Analysis Tool

MATCH ANALYSIS WORKSHEET								
<small>(Provided by the NOAA Restoration Center)</small>								
<b>Tool verifies:</b>								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> If sufficient match is provided to each funder (Row 25) and if total match needs have been met (Row 28).								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> If additional matching funds are available to dedicate to future funders (Total Match Unused, Cell I15), and if more match has been provided than is actually needed for any given funder (Row 31)								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> If matching funds were incorrectly dedicated to more than one funder (if the "provided by" row sums to more than the "available match", Row 30)								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> If the federal/non-federal status of matching funds is appropriate (Row 32).								
Pending/Secured Grants								
		Funder A	Funder B	Funder C	Funder D	Funder E	Funder F	Total
Information	Total Available as Match	\$75,000	\$57,500	\$34,500	\$30,000			\$197,000
	Are These Federal Funds?	Yes	Yes	No	No			
	Match Required	\$50,000	\$57,500	\$10,000	\$0			\$117,500
	Match Restrictions	Nonfederal Only	Nonfederal Only	None	None			
	Unused (see below)	\$65,000	\$27,500	(\$10,500)	\$5,000	\$0	\$0	\$87,000
Match Provided								
		To Funder A	To Funder B	To Funder C	To Funder D	To Funder E	To Funder F	Total
Match Provided	By Funder A			\$10,000				\$10,000
	By Funder B	\$30,000						\$30,000
	By Funder C	\$45,000						\$45,000
	By Funder D		\$25,000					\$25,000
	By Funder E							\$0
	By Funder F							\$0
	Remaining Match Needed	-\$25,000	\$32,500	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
WARNINGS!!!								
		Funder A	Funder B	Funder C	Funder D	Funder E	Funder F	
Has the funder's match requirement been met?	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Is match from this funder used more than once? <small>A matching source may be split to match multiple sources, but an individual dollar of matching funds may only be used one time.</small>	No	No	Warning! You have used more funds than you have indicated are available from this source. Check with the funder to see if this is allowable.	No	No	No	No	
Have you provided more match than needed? <small>Allotting more match to a funder than you indicated was required in the table above may impact your ability to provide matching funds to other sources.</small>	Warning! You may have provided more match than needed. Consider reducing your match.	No	No	No	No	No	No	
Are all match type requirements met? <small>Federal funding sources often require non-federal match.</small>	Warning! You have used federal funds to match a source that requires non-federal match. Please revise your matrix above.	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
<b>Key to colors:</b>								
Data to be entered by Project Manager								
A Caution, Federal Funding Source. Make sure to check match restrictions.								
Caution, cells contain formulas. Use caution when editing cell.								

Toolkit Resource #26a:

**Example Independent Cost Estimate**

*Engineering and Design Costs Itemized by Labor*

Line Item	Cost/unit	Units	Total Cost
Senior engineer	200/hr	20	\$4,000.00
Project manager	125/hr	140	\$17,500.00
Project engineer	125/hr	30	\$3,750.00
Project engineer, 2	95/hr	50	\$4,750.00
Environmental scientist	75/hr	30	\$2,250.00
Junior project engineer	75/hr	30	\$2,250.00
Technician	50/hr	25	\$1,250.00
Clerical	35/hr	10	\$350.00
<b>Labor Subtotal</b>			<b>\$36,100.00</b>
Airfare/ person	400	2	\$800.00
Lodging per diem	104	4	\$416.00
ME&I Per diem	54	4	\$216.00
Reproduction, mailing	1200	4	\$4,800.00
Rental car/gas	95	1	\$95.00
Mileage/parking	125	1	\$125.00
Reimbursables total			\$6,452.00
<b>Other Subtotal</b>			<b>\$12,904.00</b>
<b>Total Cost</b>			<b>\$49,004.00</b>

Toolkit Resource #26b:

**Example Independent Cost Estimate**

*Engineering and Design Costs Itemized by Task*

Line Item	Cost/unit	Units	Total Cost
Data collection	2000/ day	3	\$6,000.00
Survey	3600/day	3	\$10,800.00
Conceptual design	3200	2	\$6,400.00
Engineering design	17000	1	\$17,000.00
Permit development/submittal	7500	1	\$7,500.00
Regulatory requests for information	3800	3	\$11,400.00
<b>Total Cost</b>			<b>\$59,100.00</b>

Toolkit Resource #26c:

**Example Independent Cost Estimate**

*Construction Costs Itemized by Labor*

Line Item	Cost/unit	Units	Total Cost
Senior scientist	125/hr	40	\$5,000.00
Project scientist	95/hr	120	\$11,400.00
Junior scientist	70/hr	150	\$10,500.00
Senior project manager	200/hr	240	\$48,000.00
Construction foreman	150/hr	200	\$30,000.00
Heavy equipment operator	105/hr	120	\$12,600.00
Front end loader	250/day	15	\$3,750.00
Dump truck	175/day	15	\$2,625.00
General labor	50/hr	400	\$20,000.00
Nursery subcontract	15000	1	\$15,000.00
Senior engineer	200/ hr	12	\$2,400.00
Engineer project	125/ hr	24	\$3,000.00
<b>Total Cost</b>			<b>\$164,275.00</b>

Toolkit Resource #26d:

**Example Independent Cost Estimate**

*Construction Costs Itemized by Task*

Line Item	Cost/unit	Units	Total Cost
Pre-construction monitoring	3600/day	10	\$36,000.00
Contractor mobilization	25000	1	\$25,000.00
Earth-moving	18000	1	\$18,000.00
Culvert installation	9500	3	\$28,500.00
Vegetation planting	4/plant	5000	\$20,000.00
As-built monitoring	3600	5	\$18,000.00
Contractor demobilization	15000	1	\$15,000.00
<b>Total Cost</b>			<b>\$160,500.00</b>



## Tools, Tips, and Templates for: Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring



Scientific monitoring is the systematic collection of data that provides information on changes that can indicate problems and/or progress toward achieving restoration project goals and objectives (NOAA Wetland Guide). Monitoring requires the measure of certain habitat attributes or physical parameters at regular intervals before and after project implementation. This record of habitat changes, along with comparison to a reference condition, will indicate if objectives are being met.

### Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring Resources

The tools included here are designed to be detailed and user-friendly. In this toolkit chapter you will find the following resources for conducting scientific evaluation and monitoring:

- *Toolkit Resource #27*  
**Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring Summary Recommendations**  
A summary of key recommendations from Chapter 7 of the *Returning the Tide Guidance Manual*, "Scientific Evaluation and Monitoring."

- *Toolkit Resource #28*  
**Monitoring Data Collection Form**  
Includes templates for collecting data on core parameters such as hydrology, soil salinity, vegetation, and nekton.
- *Toolkit Resource #29*  
**Example Wildlife Monitoring Datasheet**  
An example spreadsheet for collecting behavioral observation data for wildlife.
- *Toolkit Resource #30*  
**Monitoring Plan Template**  
Provided by the NOAA Restoration Center as an example of information collected from funded projects to meet minimum monitoring standards.



Electronic versions of these resources are available for download at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html)

### Toolkit Resource #27: Summary Recommendations

1. Ensure that all projects receive a basic level of monitoring to provide some degree of confidence that the individual project is meeting goals and objectives. A subset of projects should receive a more robust level of scientific evaluation.
2. Plan to conduct one year of pre-construction monitoring at the project and references sites – this is critical for determining the effect of restoration actions. Post-construction monitoring should extend long enough to evaluate project effectiveness (minimum five years; ideally twenty years).
3. Choose parameters for monitoring that closely match the highest priority objectives of the projects.
4. Utilize the four core scientific monitoring parameters for tidal hydrology restoration: hydrology, vegetation, soil, and nekton.
5. Consider initiating an effort to create regional core, or standard, parameters and methods to allow for improved comparison among project sites within a geographic region.
6. Disseminate the results of the project monitoring broadly to advance the science of tidal hydrology restoration – with the goal of better understanding and improved restoration in the future.

## Toolkit Resource #28: Monitoring Plan Template

Monitoring Plan Template	
Project Name:	
Project Proponent:	
Project Goal:	<i>(the overall intent of the habitat restoration effort; in some cases, it can be long-term and exceed the life of the immediate available funding)</i>
Structural Objective	
Parameter	<i>(what will be measured and in what units)</i>
Technique for Measurement	<i>(optional)</i>
Baseline	<i>(pre-construction or earliest available post-construction numerical value for the structural parameter)</i>
Reference	<i>(ideal numerical value for the structural parameter)</i>
Target	<i>(proposed numerical value desired for the structural parameter)</i>
Timing	<i>(sampling frequency and end date)</i>
Functional Objective	
Parameter	<i>(what will be measured and in what units)</i>
Technique for Measurement	<i>(optional)</i>
Baseline	<i>(pre-construction or earliest available post-construction numerical value for the functional parameter)</i>
Reference	<i>(ideal numerical value for the functional parameter)</i>
Target	<i>(proposed numerical value desired for the functional parameter)</i>
Timing	<i>(sampling frequency and end date)</i>

## Toolkit Resource #29a: Monitoring Data Collection Form Core Parameter: Hydrology

Core Parameter: Hydrology	
Date	
Time	
Weather Condition	
Wind Speed	
Wind Direction	
Tide	
Staff Gauge #	
Water Height	
Time	
Weather Condition	
Wind Speed	
Wind Direction	
Tide	
Staff Gauge #	
Water Height	
Time	
Weather Condition	
Wind Speed	
Wind Direction	
Tide	
Staff Gauge #	
Water Height	

## Toolkit Resource #29b: Monitoring Data Collection Form Core Parameter: Soil

Core Parameter: Soil	
Date	
Characteristic (e.g. Salinity)	
<b>Station 1</b>	
Time	
Salinity	
<b>Station 2</b>	
Time	
Salinity	
<b>Station 3</b>	
Time	
Salinity	
<b>Station 4</b>	
Time	
Salinity	
<b>Station 5</b>	
Time	
Salinity	

Toolkit Resource #29c: **Monitoring Data Collection Form** Core Parameter: *Vegetation*

Core Parameter: Vegetation				
Date				
Weather Conditions				
<b>Transect #1</b>	<b>Quadrat 1</b>	<b>Quadrat 2</b>	<b>Quadrat 3</b>	<b>Quadrat 4</b>
Time				
% Cover (Native/Non-native)				
Plant Height (10 samples)				
Reproduction ?				
<b>Transect #2</b>	<b>Quadrat 1</b>	<b>Quadrat 2</b>	<b>Quadrat 3</b>	<b>Quadrat 4</b>
Time				
% Cover (Native/Non-native)				
Plant Height (10 samples)				
Reproduction ?				
<b>Transect #3</b>	<b>Quadrat 1</b>	<b>Quadrat 2</b>	<b>Quadrat 3</b>	<b>Quadrat 4</b>
Time				
% Cover (Native/Non-native)				
Plant Height (10 samples)				
Reproduction ?				
<b>Transect #4</b>	<b>Quadrat 1</b>	<b>Quadrat 2</b>	<b>Quadrat 3</b>	<b>Quadrat 4</b>
Time				
% Cover (Native/Non-native)				
Plant Height (10 samples)				
Reproduction ?				
<b>Transect #5</b>	<b>Quadrat 1</b>	<b>Quadrat 2</b>	<b>Quadrat 3</b>	<b>Quadrat 4</b>
Time				
% Cover (Native/Non-native)				
Plant Height (10 samples)				
Reproduction ?				

## Toolkit Resource #29d: Monitoring Data Collection Form Core Parameter: Nekton

Core Parameter: Nekton						
Capture Method (e.g. seine)						
Date						
Weather Conditions						
<b>Capture #1</b>						
Time						
Tide						
	Species #1	Species #2	Species #3	Species #4	Species #5	Species #6
# individuals						
Length/ Weight						
Individual #1						
Individual #2						
Individual #3						
Individual #4						
Individual #5						
Individual #6						
Individual #7						
Individual #8						
Individual #9						
Individual #10						
<b>Capture #1</b>						
Time						
Tide						
	Species #1	Species #2	Species #3	Species #4	Species #5	Species #6
# individuals						
Length/ Weight						
Individual #1						
Individual #2						
Individual #3						
Individual #4						
Individual #5						
Individual #6						
Individual #7						
Individual #8						
Individual #9						
Individual #10						
<b>Capture #1</b>						
Time						
Tide						
	Species #1	Species #2	Species #3	Species #4	Species #5	Species #6
# individuals						
Length/ Weight						
Individual #1						
Individual #2						
Individual #3						
Individual #4						
Individual #5						
Individual #6						
Individual #7						
Individual #8						
Individual #9						
Individual #10						







## Tools, Tips, and Templates for: Community Support



Often the public is not highly informed about the ecological impacts of historic tidal hydrology modifications in the Southeast United States. To increase demand for tidal hydrology restoration and gain public support for projects, practitioners must commit resources to develop intensive community relations programs. Governmental and nongovernmental organizations, as well as environmental nonprofit groups should adopt strategies that nurture the development of an informed and politically active constituency for the widespread restoration of tidal areas.

### Resources for Community Support

The tools included here are designed to be detailed and user-friendly. In this toolkit chapter you will find the following resources for successfully integrating community involvement into your tidal hydrology restoration project:

- *Toolkit Resource #31*  
**Community Support  
Summary Recommendations**  
A summary of key recommendations from Chapter 8 of the *Returning the Tide Guidance Manual*, "Community Involvement."

- *Toolkit Resource #32*  
**Non-Governmental Organizations Focusing on Coastal Restoration and Community Involvement in the Southeastern United States**  
A list of organizations that serve as models for incorporating community involvement in habitat restoration projects. The listed organizations may also serve as a regional resource for new projects seeking to incorporate volunteers into their own programs.
- *Toolkit Resource #33*  
**Resources for Developing Volunteer Management Programs**  
Includes a variety of organizations and studies designed to strengthen and support volunteering, volunteer management, and volunteer monitoring.



Electronic versions of these resources are available for download at [http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal\\_hydro.html](http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/tidal_hydro.html)

### Toolkit Resource #31: Summary Recommendations

1. Build organization capacity for community involvement and dedicate staff in areas of education, advocacy, and volunteer coordination.
2. Commit resources to developing intensive community relations programs.
3. Take into account concerns of the affected community. Do not overlook public perceptions and needs during the project.
4. Develop a comprehensive volunteer strategy to build public support.
5. Implement monitoring practices specifically for volunteers. This will provide multiple cost-effective project benefits.

## Toolkit Resource #32:

# Non-Governmental Organizations Focusing on Coastal Restoration and Community Involvement in the Southeastern United States

- **The North Carolina Coastal Federation**  
For over 25 years, the North Carolina Coastal Federation (NCCF) has served as the only non-profit organization focused exclusively on protecting and restoring the coast of North Carolina. NCCF has designated community involvement as a key component in its education, advocacy, and habitat preservation and restoration strategies. For more information, visit <http://www.nccoast.org/>.
- **Tampa Bay Watch**  
Tampa Bay Watch, Inc., is a non-profit stewardship program dedicated exclusively to the charitable and scientific purpose of protecting and restoring the marine and wetland environments of the Tampa Bay estuary. Tampa Bay Watch trains and organizes citizen volunteers, students, at-risk youth, and civic organizations to participate in environmental projects while heightening community awareness of the fragility and importance of the environment. For more information, visit <http://www.tampabaywatch.org/>.
- **Gulf of Mexico Foundation**  
The Gulf of Mexico Foundation promotes conservation and preservation of the Gulf through voluntary and cooperative stewardship by individuals, communities, and economic enterprises of the U.S. and Mexico. Only through awareness, understanding, and stewardship can the Gulf be conserved and nurtured for the benefit of future generations. For more information, visit <http://www.gulfmex.org/>.
- **Galveston Bay Foundation**  
The Galveston Bay Foundation serves to preserve, protect, and enhance Galveston Bay – one of the world’s most productive estuaries. The Foundation’s balanced programs in advocacy, conservation, education, and research strive to ensure that Galveston Bay remains a beautiful and productive place for future generations. For more information, visit <http://www.galvbay.org/>.
- **Alabama Coastal Foundation**  
The Alabama Coastal Foundation (ACF) works to create a healthy balance between the conservation needs of our priceless coastal resources and the inevitable pressures of economic growth. The mission of the ACF is to improve and protect Alabama’s coastal resources by encouraging citizens to educate themselves about local issues, and to work together to preserve the areas natural resources through participation in preservation and educational projects. For more information, visit <http://www.joinacf.org/index.htm>.

## Toolkit Resource #33:

# Resources for Developing Volunteer Management Programs

- **Corporation for National and Community Service – Volunteer Resource Center**  
The Resource Center is a clearinghouse of materials designed to strengthen national service and volunteer programs – including free downloadable tools; a specialized collection of books, videos, and other publications on loan; the Effective Practices Collection; and a growing catalog of online courses. Discover incredible resources related to national and community service – search the site, browse by topic, and collaborate with other service professionals. [http://www.nationalservice.gov/for\\_organizations/tta/index.asp](http://www.nationalservice.gov/for_organizations/tta/index.asp).
- **ServiceLeader.org: For Volunteer Managers**  
This area provides information on all aspects of volunteer management, including getting your organization ready to involve volunteers, volunteer screening, matching, record-keeping and evaluation, legal issues/risk management, volunteer/staff relations, online activism by volunteers, and volunteer management software. <http://www.utexas.edu/lbj/rgk/serviceleader/leaders/>.
- **The Volunteer Monitor’s Guide to Quality Assurance Project Plans**  
A quality assurance project plan, or QAPP, outlines the procedures that those who conduct a monitoring project should take to ensure the data they collect and analyze meets project requirements. This document is designed to encourage and facilitate the development of volunteer QAPPs by clearly presenting explanations and examples. Readers are urged to consult the additional resources listed in the appendices of this document, and to contact their state or U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Regional quality assurance staff for specific information or guidance on their projects. <http://www.epa.gov/OWOW/monitoring/volunteer/qappcovr.htm>.
- **Habitat Restoration Volunteer Study**  
A study to assess the effects of community-based restoration on stewardship in communities, including recommendations for improving volunteer activities and outcomes. [http://galvbay.org/docs/GBF\\_Human\\_Dimensions\\_FinalReport\\_March%202007.pdf](http://galvbay.org/docs/GBF_Human_Dimensions_FinalReport_March%202007.pdf).







**NOAA Restoration Center**

1315 East-West Highway  
Silver Spring MD, 20910

**NOAA Coastal Services Center**

2234 South Hobson Avenue  
Charleston, SC 29405

A digital version of this manual, as well as all online materials and tools referenced, can be downloaded at:  
<http://www.habitat.noaa.gov/partners/toolkits/>

NOVEMBER 2010

**Recommended Citation:**

NOAA Restoration Center & NOAA Coastal Services Center. 2010. *Returning the Tide, A Tidal Hydrology Restoration Guidance Manual for the Southeastern U.S.* NOAA, Silver Spring, MD.